

CM 334178

1942 SABOTEURS CASE

CORRESPONDENCE PART 3.

MEMORANDUM

June 29, 1942

SUMMARY OF STATEMENT OF GEORGE JOHN DASCH

Dasch, on interview, furnished the following facts:

He advised that he was born in Speyer on the Rhine in Germany on February 7, 1903, the fifth child of John Dasch, a cabinet maker. He was with the German Army in 1917 and 1918 as a clerk in northern France. After the war he returned to Germany where he continued his education until 1922 when he stowed away aboard a steamer coming to the United States. He landed in Philadelphia and worked at odd jobs mostly in New York City until October, 1923, at which time he secured an alien seaman identification card and again went to Germany. He returned to this country and worked as a waiter in various parts of the United States, making a trip back to Germany in 1928 and again in 1930 for pleasure. Thereafter, he remained in the United States working mostly as a waiter until December of 1940, when he received money from the German Consulate for his passage to Germany. He returned to Germany through Japan and Russia arriving in Berlin on May 13, 1941. His reason for wanting to return to Germany was that both his brother and his mother had made him feel that he had been wrong in his opinion of Hitler, since they were convinced that Hitler was doing a fine thing for the German people, while before this discussion with them he had been opposed to all Nazis. He wanted to go back to Germany to see with his own eyes if Hitler was actually aiding the German people, and, if so, he intended to aid Germany in its fight against its enemies.

After several attempts he was successful in obtaining a position in the foreign office listening to foreign language broadcasts and translating them into German. In attempting to find the right kind of employment in Germany, he came into contact with Lieutenant Walter Kappe, who had lived in the United States and who he later found out was directly in charge of sending sabotage groups to the United States. He had several contacts with him and through his association with Lieutenant Kappe, Dasch was recruited and claims to have organized the first groups of German saboteurs sent to the United States for the purpose of committing sabotage. All of the persons selected for this mission had formerly resided in the United States from ten to fourteen years and for the most part had been members of the German-American Bund. The selected saboteurs were sent to a German school at Quentz. The school was located on Quentz Lake about two miles from Mitteldeutsch, Stahlwerka at Brandenburg. In attendance at the school were three proposed groups of saboteurs. Group 1 consisted of George John Dasch, the leader; Joseph Schmidt, alias Swenson;

Peter Burger; and Scotty, identity unknown. Group 2 consisted of Edward Kerling, alias Edward Kelly, the leader; Herbert Haupt; Herman Neubauer, alias Herman Nicholas; and Werner Thiel, alias William Thomas. Group 3 was made up of Billy Braubander, alias Billy Smith, alias Dempsey, the leader; Ernest Zuber; Robert Quirin, alias Richard Quintas; and Heinrich Heinck, alias Henry Kayner. Certain of these individuals were found to be unsatisfactory and were to be eliminated from the group. Due to this, the school was then divided into two groups which consisted of Group 1, led by Dasch, and Group 2, led by Kerling. In Group 1 were Dasch, Joseph Schmit, Peter Burger, Richard Quirin, and Heinrich Heinck. In Group 2, in addition to Kerling, were Herbert Haupt, Herman Neubauer, and Werner Thiel. They received three weeks' instruction in how to commit sabotage. This instruction consisted of learning how to utilize the various explosives and incendiary devices which they brought with them to America and cached at the time of their landing, together with instructions in how to make their own explosive materials from common drugs to be obtained in this country. They also received instructions in how to be German agents and to perfect for themselves identities which would keep them from being detected. In addition to this they were given instruction in writing with secret ink in order to communicate back to Germany.

Following their instruction at the German sabotage school, they were taken on a tour of various plants, railroad yards, and canal systems in order to gather actual knowledge of the working of these things so that they could better direct their own sabotage efforts at these installations.

It was agreed by the leaders in Berlin that the groups would be landed on the shores of the United States from submarines. Each group leader was asked to pick that section of the country with which he was most familiar and to pick his landing place. Because Dasch was most familiar with the Long Island section of the coast, his group was to be landed near Montauk Point, Long Island, while Kerling's group was to be landed near Jacksonville Beach, Florida because of Kerling's knowledge of that particular territory.

The plan of landing was that the submarine should come as close to shore as possible and there the men with their explosives, under the guidance of two German seamen, would row ashore in a small rubber boat. As soon as they were landed the German seamen would be pulled back to the submarine in the rubber boat. The landing party was to bury its explosives, change their wet clothes for dry clothes which they would bring ashore with them in a waterproof bag, and then filter into American life, assimilating themselves with the changed conditions since they were last in the United States for a period of time, and then meeting together again to commit sabotage.

Each group leader was furnished with \$50,000 for expense money in coming ashore and carrying on the sabotage plan of each group. In addition, each member of the group was given \$9,000 for a two year period of activity. The group leader was to hold back \$5,000 of this \$9,000 for the purpose of having some control over the other members of his group. Each man was to land carrying a money belt containing some \$4,000.

The group leaders were furnished with an address in Lisbon, Portugal, by which they could communicate with Germany. In addition, they were furnished with the address of Father Krepper, c/o Gene Grey, R.F.D. 2, Box 40F, Rahway, New Jersey, as a contact in the United States. The leaders also were requested to furnish an address of a friend of theirs in the United States who would always know their whereabouts so in case one group leader did not meet the other group leader at a prearranged place, he could always contact this address for the whereabouts of the other group leader. These addresses were all written down on a handkerchief in invisible ink.

After all of the plans had been made, the two groups left Berlin on May 22, 1942 for the coast of France. En route, Joseph Schmit became ill and was left behind. Thus, Group 1 consisted of only four men rather than five as originally planned. The party arrived at Lorient, France, on Monday night, the 25th of May, 1942. The following day Kerling and his group left on a submarine designated as Submarine 203. Two days later Dasch's group left Lorient at 8:00 p.m. in the evening. The submarine was a medium type of submarine of some 750 gross tons.

During the trip to America the submarine traveled above water all the time after they were two or three days away from shore, and stayed above water until it approached the American shore. Thereafter it traveled only above water at night and below water during the day. The trip to America was uneventful with the exception that on one occasion they received a message from another submarine which advised that it had been hit and could not pump the water out of its floating tanks any more. This indicated to them that the submarine had been attacked and hit and was sinking. This occurred either on the 9th or 10th of June, 1942.

On another occasion they received a message from another submarine that a big steamer of over twenty thousand tonnage was on its way between Halifax and Boston. They attempted to intercept this steamer but were unsuccessful in doing so.

As they approached the American shore they had to proceed entirely in fog and therefore were afraid of being rammed by some

passing ship; however, on the afternoon of June 12 the sky cleared up a little and they were able to approach within twenty miles of the shore of Long Island at about eight o'clock that night. At this point they submerged under water and continued at a speed of two and one-half knots an hour toward shore. When they were within four to five hundred yards of the shore, the rubber boat was lowered over the side of the submarine and the four saboteurs with the two German sailors rowed to shore.

Dasch had orders that if he met anyone along the beach he was to overpower this individual and give him to the German sailors who would take him back to the submarine and take care of him there.

Because of the fog they were unable to judge their course accurately. In landing the boat, all of the group became wet from the water. Immediately on landing, the men took the four boxes of explosives to a high level on the beach. Dasch then went back to the German sailors to help them empty their boat of the water in order that they might return safely to the submarine. As he was talking to these sailors he noticed someone walking up the beach with a flashlight. This individual turned out to be John Cullen. Although the Coast Guardsman wanted him to accompany him to the Coast Guard Station, Dasch refused to do so and forced him to take \$300, stating that his name was George John Davis. Dasch claims he at first gave the Coast Guardsman \$200 or \$220. He then asked the Coast Guardsman to count it and when he found that he had given him only about \$220, he then gave him additional money in order to make the amount \$300. According to Dasch, the Coast Guardsman then told him to "scram out of here."

Dasch advised that he took this money from \$419 which had been given him at the time he boarded the submarine for landing money. He further advised that each member of the group had been given, in addition to his \$4,000, the sum of \$425 which was to be used when he first landed in the United States in order to buy clothes and other material. According to Dasch, this money did not amount to \$425 actually because he found that when counting the money out when he first boarded the submarine in Lorient, some of the money had Chinese or Japanese markings on it. He therefore refused to take this type of money. When all of these bills were taken out and the remaining sum split up among the four men, it proved to be the sum of \$419 each.

Immediately after the Coast Guardsman left, these men buried the four boxes together with their wet clothes in the sand on the beach and then made their way to the nearest highway and from there they walked the railroad tracks into the town of Amagansett, arriving a little after five o'clock in the morning at the railroad station there.

On reaching the station, the various individuals in the group cleaned themselves up as best they could and waited for the station to open. Dasch then purchased for the group railroad tickets from Amagansett to Jamaica, Long Island. Here the group agreed to split up with Robert Quirin and Heinrich Heinck going to New York City by one route, and Dasch and Peter Burger by another route, it being agreed that they would again meet at the Horn and Hardart Cafeteria on 8th Avenue between 34th and 35th Streets at three o'clock the following Sunday afternoon. Both groups then purchased different clothes in Jamaica and went to New York. Dasch and Burger went to the Governor Clinton Hotel in New York City, after which they purchased additional clothes. On Sunday they met at the prearranged spot with Quirin and Heinck, at which time they again arranged for a later meeting. It was subsequent to this time that Dasch and the others were taken into custody.

Dasch also advised that the sabotage objective of his group was to attack the light metal industry in the southwest and eastern sections of the United States, particularly the Alcoa Plant at Alcoa, Tennessee, and the Aluminum Company of America's plant in East St. Louis, Illinois. After obtaining this objective, they were next to attack, destroy, and disrupt the main line of the Chesapeake and Ohio Railroad at any point they determined to be vulnerable. Following this they were to destroy, if possible, the inland waterway running from Cincinnati, Ohio, to the Mississippi River in that area between Cincinnati and Louisville. In this connection, they were instructed to attack the canal system. Their first point of attack was to be the plant at Alcoa, Tennessee.

Group 2, under the leadership of Kerling, had for its sabotage objectives the Aluminum Company of America's plant at Massena, New York, and then next the Cryolite plant in Philadelphia, it being explained that in the processing of aluminum one of the most important processes calls for the use of cryolite, and since the Philadelphia plant was supposed to have a monopoly upon this material, the attacking of that plant would disrupt all of the light metal industry in the United States. In addition, this group was to attack the new Pennsylvania Railroad depot at Newark, New Jersey, and the Hell Gate Bridge which connects Long Island, New York, with the Bronx. Both groups were then to commit any other acts of sabotage which they thought desirable.

George Dasch advised that on his handkerchief, written in secret ink, was an address in Lisbon, Portugal, to which the group leaders were instructed to write in order to communicate with Germany. In communicating with this address they were to write three or four letters signed by any name and containing different innocuous information. On the back, however, these letters were to be signed with a last name commencing with the first two letters of their correct names. This

message was to be written with a match especially prepared for this purpose. This match could not be used to ignite anything but was a set method of concealing writing. The writing could only be developed after the material was treated by a chemical and placed under a certain type of ultra-violet lamp. Dasch lost his three matches at the time of landing.

At the time Dasch boarded the German submarine, No. 202, at Lorient, France, he was given his old Gladstone bag, which he had previously furnished to the officers in charge of the sabotage expedition, and they had placed the money in the bottom of this bag in a false compartment. In the bottom of his bag was placed the \$50,000.00 that he was to bring to the United States, with an additional \$25,000.00 which represented \$5,000.00 for himself and each member of his group. However, there was an additional \$5,000.00 in view of the fact that one of the men of his group, namely, Joseph Schmidt, did not leave on the trip. At the time Dasch arrived at the Governor Clinton Hotel, he broke open the false bottom of his suitcase and found that he had therein \$80,000.00. This would be \$5,000.00 more than he should have had if one figures he was supposed to have \$50,000.00 for organization and \$5,000.00 for each of the five members of his group. The additional \$5,000.00 is explained in that Kerling was supposed to have three small zipper bags with false bottoms, and there was not enough room in these bags to hide all of his money. Therefore, an additional \$5,000.00 was placed in Dasch's bag to be delivered to Kerling when they first met in this country.

New York City
Sunday, June 28, 1942

I, EDWARD JOHN KERLING, give the following voluntary statement to Special Agents JOHN A. HOLTZMAN and D. M. BRIGHTMAN, who have identified themselves as Special Agents of the Federal Bureau of Investigation. I have been made no promises and no duress has been used in order to induce me to make this statement. I make the same freely and voluntarily knowing that it can be used against me if necessary.

I was born in Wiesbaden-Biebrich, Rhineland, Germany, June 12, 1909. My father's name is KASPER KERLING and my mother's name is WALBY/AGA. They both reside at Wiesbaden-Biebrich, Rhineland, Germany. My father is a retired director of the South German Railroad Company. During World War #1 he served as a Lieutenant in the German Army and was wounded in action. I have one sister WALY. She is married to FRITZ MEYER-HOLTMANN. My brother-in-law is not in the German Army, but is employed at the I. G. Farbenindustrie. -----U

I graduated from public school and from the Riehl School (high school) in Wiesbaden. I attended Friedberg University for two semesters, which is approximately one and a quarter years, where I studied engineering. At the time I was attending this school, which was in the part of Germany occupied by the British, my parents were evacuated by the British troops into unoccupied Germany.

I left school and came to the United States on the SS DRESDEN in March, 1928. I traveled to New York as a tourist passenger under a quota on the SS DRESDEN. I secured a position with the Dold Packing Company of Brooklyn, New York, working at smoking hams. I remained here two years, then I secured a position with Cohen Brothers Packing house on Greenwich Street, New York City, as shipping clerk. I worked there for about two years. I then secured a position as chauffeur for ELI CULBERTSON, the bridge expert, on his place at Hicksville, Long Island, where I remained for one summer. After that I secured a position with HENRY DICKS, a uniform manufacturer who had estates at Mt. Kisco, New York and St. Petersburg, Florida. I worked for this man during the summer and winter of 1933.

On October 13, 1931, I married MARIE SICHART at the City Hall, New York City. My wife had come to the United States in either 1923 or 1926 from Munich, where her mother presently is residing, being supported on a pension. My wife's father is dead.

About June, 1933, my wife and I returned to Germany on the SS DEUTSCHLAND, which left from New York City and landed at Hamburg. I worked my way over on the boat in the kitchen while my wife went as a tourist passenger.

While in Germany we visited our families. My wife and I returned to New York about September, 1933, on the SS DEUTSCHLAND as tourist passengers. After my return, I secured a position as chauffeur with W. J. HOGGSON, a banker residing in Greenwich, Connecticut. I worked for this man from two to two and a half years. After this I secured a position with VICTOR G. ARMSTRONG, a railroad man living at Short Hills, New Jersey. I worked for this man for about four years, until 1939.

During this time and about June, 1936, I returned to Germany alone on the SS EUROPA to attend the Olympic Games in Berlin. I stayed there about four weeks and returned on the SS BREMEN. My trip over and back was taken as a tourist passenger.

^E
yawl In the latter part of 1939, I and others purchased a boat, LAKALA, a ~~sleep~~, in Baltimore, Maryland, and sailed it to Florida. It was our intention to return to Germany in this boat but because of restrictions placed upon them we were unable to do so and consequently were forced to sell the boat in Miami in May, 1940.

In June, 1940, I returned to Germany on the SS EXOCHORDIA of the American Export Line via Lisbon, Portugal. After staying from twelve to fourteen days in Lisbon waiting for transportation, I finally flew to Rome, Italy where I took a train to Germany, arriving at Innsbruck on August 3, 1940. I went direct to Berlin looking for a job and got a position with the German Army. I was sent to Deauville, France, where I worked in an army listening post translating records of English broadcasts. I remained there three months, until the project was given up, and then returned to Berlin. I then got a job with the Propaganda Ministry as a "referent" managing German (legitimate stage shows) theatres. I remained there until April, 1942.

About the middle of April, 1942, the exact date I am unable to remember, a man who identified himself as ^{Branch Office} WALTER KAPPE came to my office in the German Propaganda Ministry Building located at Fehrbelliner Place #3, Berlin, Germany. KAPPE was in civilian clothes and stated that he had a record of me and knew that I had been in America. I imagine he obtained this record from either the police or immigration records where I had been required to register as I entered Germany and when I went to Berlin. KAPPE asked me what I had done while I was in America and I explained my activities in the United States as have been set out previously in this statement.

KAPPE then asked me if I wanted to return to the United States and I asked him why. He then told me that I would get the necessary information later. I told him that I was not able to get away because of my job

and he told me that that would be arranged also. At that time I was making 600 marks a month working for the Propaganda Ministry.

About a week later KAPPE came back to the office and asked me if I would come to the United States on a military mission as a soldier. I asked him what I would do and who else was going. He said I would find out later and I agreed that I would take the assignment thinking that it would involve coming to the United States in uniform, getting a job done and returning to Germany. KAPPE told me that he was selecting men for this assignment who had formerly lived in the United States.

After I agreed to come to the United States on this mission, KAPPE gave me his local Berlin address, which I do not now remember and told me to come to that place several days later. I did this, at which time I met KAPPE and GEORGE DASCH. This was in an apartment building, KAPPE occupying the top floor apartment, and the building was near the Gedächtnis Church. KAPPE told DASCH and myself that we would be required to attend a school at Brandenburg, Germany for a special training course. This conversation took place late in the day around the end of April.

Within several days after this conversation, I managed to clean up my affairs in the Propaganda Ministry and went back to KAPPE's apartment to keep the appointment previously made. At this time the following individuals were also there in addition to KAPPE, who by this time I knew to be a Lieutenant in the German Army: GEORGE DASCH, HERB HAUPT, HERMAN NEUBAUER, THEIL, PETER, last name unknown, HEINDRICH, last name unknown, HENRY, last name unknown, SMITH, known to me as Smitty. Besides these individuals, there was a man called DEMPSEY, whose first name I do not know at the present. These last two mentioned persons did not finish the special training course, as set out later in this statement.

This group of eleven, which included myself was taken by Lieutenant KAPPE to an estate outside of Brandenburg located on Quintz Lake, which date to the best of my recollection was about May 1.

This estate had a house with living accommodations for ten or twelve individuals, a gymnasium, and a pistol and rifle range. At the time we arrived there, there were several caretakers and a farmer present but no other classes or groups of individuals that I know of. Lieutenant KAPPE did not remain there but returned to Berlin and instructions were taken over by two men known to me as SCHULTER and KOENIG, who were civilians. We were given instructions from nine to twelve A. M. and from two to four P. M. daily.

It is my idea that one of the primary reasons for this school was to enable this group of eleven to become acquainted with each other and learn to like and trust each other. We conversed together in English so as to perfect our English, although we received instructions in German. I might mention that when I inquired about other similar groups, I was informed that this was the first class of its kind.

By way of training we were instructed in the use of explosives, which we called dynamite, time fuses, detonators, and incendiary pencils, necessary to ignite dynamite, and physical training. We were not given specific instructions as to plants or facilities that we were to destroy in the United States, but were told to concentrate on power lines, and that if we were able to destroy railroads and other facilities without injuring or killing anyone, we should do so. Our instructions were very definite that we were not to cause the death of any one or injury to any one by explosives and it was explained to us that it would not be of any benefit to Germany but would only serve to arouse the people of the United States against us. The only use to which the incendiary pencils were to be put was to light fuses on the bombs and high explosives. In connection with the destruction of power facilities, we were taken to a factory of the I. G. Farbenindustrie located on the Elbe River in the town of Biesterfeld. At this plant we were shown the various vital spots in the power supply, which were capable of being sabotaged.

During the course of our training we were also given practical demonstrations of the explosive materials we were to use. This course lasted for a period of two or three weeks. I can't remember exactly which and during the course the two persons above-mentioned dropped out since they were not liked and could not get along with the other students.

Upon the completion of the course, we were told to meet in Lieutenant KAPPE's apartment in Berlin on a particular date, which I do not remember, around the latter part of May, 1942. Until this date our time was to be our own and I spent mine with my parents in Wiesbaden-Biebrich, Rhineland, Germany. On the appointed date in the latter part of May, I met the eight other individuals in KAPPE's apartment, and at that time the individuals were grouped as follows:

In my group were HAUPT, NEUBAUER, and THEIL. In the group headed by GEORGE DASCH were SMITTY, PETER, HEINDRICH, and HENRY. I do not know the last names of any of the other individuals.

I was given ^{about} \$2500 in \$50 bills which were contained in a money belt and three satchels containing false bottoms which contained a sizeable amount of money, which I estimated to be around \$35,000, although I was never told exactly how much money was in there and I did not count it at that time. These satchels were blue in color and made out of canvas-like material. I was given charge of the money for my group of four and at the time we arrived in the United States, I turned one of these satchels over to NEUBAUER to care for.

I was also given four or five matches that were capable of producing secret writing. No one else in my group got any of these matches. I was told that after we became settled and located in the United States I was to communicate by use of these matches with Lieutenant KAPPE in Berlin. The communication was to be effected by using a mail drop address in Lisbon, Portugal, which was furnished to me in secret writing on a white handkerchief. This address, which I do not know from my own memory, was to be produced by putting the handkerchief in ammonia and holding it up to the light. There was also an address of a relative of GEORGE DASCH's on this handkerchief in secret writing, which I could use to get in touch with DASCH in case I needed assistance from him or any member of his group. This man, a relative of Dash, would have no other information than Dash's address.

It is my understanding that he was given a similar handkerchief containing the mail drop address and the address of my wife, ^{as above} both written in secret writing, to enable him to communicate with Germany or get in touch with me in case he needed assistance. I was told to mention KAPPE's name in ~~the secret~~ ^{the secret} text hand writing on the letter sent to this Lisbon address and to put a message for KAPPE in secret writing using the matches furnished. I do not know the method used to develop this secret writing. We were also shown eight wooden boxes in Berlin, four of which were to be taken by each group.

I might mention here that we were given a very wide discretion in the use of the money and in the use of explosives contained in the wooden boxes, although we were told that we might be able to get help in the United States from individuals there who were sympathetic to the German cause. Although this too was left to our discretion. It was suggested to us that we might obtain jobs in the United States.

Besides the money furnished to us as we left Berlin, I was to receive my regular salary that I had been getting from the Propaganda Ministry, which was 600 marks a month. This was to be credited to my account in Berlin. This is the usual arrangement for persons called up for active service.

After all the individuals met in KAPPE's apartment, we were given our money and other articles and proceeded to Lorient, France by railroad in the company of Lieutenant KAPPE. Lorient is located North of Bordeaux

and is on the coast. After we arrived there, we all went to the same hotel, the name of which I do not remember, and remained there for approximately two days during the day.

I might also mention that I had been furnished with a Draft Registration card and a Social Security card made out in the name of EDWARD J. KELLY.

the same day
During the night of ~~about the second day~~ after we arrived in Lorient, my group of four were taken to the pier and put aboard a submarine, the name of which I do not know, and it is my understanding that GEORGE DASCH and his group of five were to leave sometime later. After we arrived on the submarine, the Captain told us not to ask any questions and assured us that we would not be asked any questions. It was about a two or three week trip from Germany to the United States, during which time the submarine traveled most of the time on the surface and during which time we did not see any other vessels.

Upon nearing the United States the Captain said that he would land us somewhere below Jacksonville, Florida, and he and I examined a sea chart of the Florida coast and picked out a spot where we landed and where the explosives were later buried. The submarine approached to within a short distance of the shore, passing a ~~light ship~~ ^{light ship} on the way. My group of four and a sailor from the submarine came ashore in a rubber boat bringing with us the four boxes, three satchels containing money and articles of clothing, and a shovel to be used for burying the explosives.

Immediately upon arriving on shore, the sailor was taken back to the submarine by means of the rubber boat.

I examined the immediate vicinity where we landed to determine that there were no houses or people around and we then proceeded to bury the four boxes of explosives on the beach.

Subsequent to my arrest and on Thursday, June 25, 1942, I directed Special Agents of the Federal Bureau of Investigation to the spot where the explosives were buried and I was present during the time they were photographed and removed from this spot and identified them as the boxes of explosives which were brought from Germany to the United States. I took this trip from New York to the beach near Jacksonville voluntary and of my own free will, signing a predated consent on June 27th.

After we had buried the four boxes containing the explosives, I instructed one of the men to throw the shovel into the water, which was at low tide at the time. We then took off our swimming suits and started for Jacksonville Beach, Florida. At the time the dawn was just breaking, but I do not know what the hour was. We walked along the beach for what I would

judge to be an hour or two and then arrived at Jacksonville Beach, and waited around there in our swimming suits until about eleven A. M., when we put our clothes on and caught a bus to Jacksonville, where we arrived about noon. This was on Wednesday, June 17, and NEUBAUER and I immediately separated from HAUPT and THEIL. NEUBAUER and I registered as Nichols and Kelly at the Seminole Hotel in Jacksonville and HAUPT and THEIL went to another hotel, the name of which I do not know.

During the afternoon on the same day NEUBAUER and I shopped for clothing and other necessary personal articles and we met Haupt by arrangement that evening. At this time, Haupt, Neubauer and I agreed that Haupt and Theil would catch a train the next morning, Thursday, for Cincinnati and Theil would remain in Cincinnati and Haupt would then take a train to Chicago. Neubauer and I were to wait one more day and leave Jacksonville by train for Cincinnati on Friday morning, and on arriving in Cincinnati, Neubauer was to go on to Chicago while I was to meet Theil at 1:00 P. M. on Saturday, June 20, in the restaurant of the Gibson Hotel.

According to this arrangement, Theil and Haupt left the following morning and Neubauer and myself left at 8:00 A. M. on Friday, June 19. I might state that during the time we were in Jacksonville, I did not meet or contact anybody, nor were we met by anybody on the beach where the submarine landed us.

We arrived in Cincinnati on the morning of Saturday, June 20, about nine A. M. and it had been determined that Neubauer was going on to Chicago that day. I do not know exactly where he was going to stay in Chicago, but he mentioned the Blackstone Hotel, and stated he wanted a hotel employing negroes because they were not as sharp and curious as white people are. It was arranged between NEUBAUER and myself that on July 6, 1942, I was to be registered at the Knickerbocker Hotel in Chicago as EDWARD J. KELLY, and that at ten A. M. on that date NEUBAUER would contact me by telephone and tell me where I could meet him and put me in touch with HAUPT, whose Chicago address was unknown to me.

Upon our arrival in Cincinnati, NEUBAUER and I ate breakfast at the Gibson Hotel, after having checked our bags at the railroad station. We then walked the streets of Cincinnati, attended a show and went to the barber shop. At one o'clock NEUBAUER went to eat and I met THEIL in a restaurant in the Gibson Hotel. THEIL did not tell me where he was staying but said he was living at the hotel under the name of WILLIAM THOMAS. After lunch, THEIL left me and I met NEUBAUER at the post office located about a block from the Gibson Hotel. We went to the ~~main entrance~~ ^{ticket office} where NEUBAUER got a ticket for Chicago on the New York Central. He was informed he could get on the train at nine P. M. that date, Saturday, June 20, and that the train would leave sometime later in the evening and arrive in Chicago at seven A. M.

the next day. At this time NEUBAUER was in possession of HAUPT'S telephone number in Chicago, but I do not know what the number was. I purchased two tickets for New York City on the New York Central Railroad for THEIL and myself, and after we had purchased the tickets we met THEIL by arrangement at 3:30 PM in a bar opposite from the postoffice. We stayed at the bar until about 5:00 PM when THEIL went to get his belongings from the hotel and we then went to the railroad station, where ^{separate} THEIL and I boarded the train for New York about 6:00 PM. I might state that during the time we were in Cincinnati we did not contact any other individual and our only reason for going to Cincinnati was to avoid taking a train straight up the East Coast in the United States, since we were under the impression that passenger lists were checked and that we might be questioned if we came up the coastline.

THEIL and I arrived in New York City on Sunday, June 20, and we immediately went to the Commodore Hotel where we registered, which was about noontime. I used the name of EDWARD KELLY and THEIL used the name of WILLIAM THOMAS. I had previously mentioned to NEUBAUER that we might go to the Commodore Hotel to stay. I told him I would use the name of KELLY.

We slept during the afternoon and at five or six ate dinner and then took a subway to Astoria to see HELMUT LEINERT. I have known him for about ten years but I do not know his exact address in Astoria. When we arrived at LEINERT'S, THEIL went to the door and called him out and LEINERT was very surprised to see us. I told him I had been to Mexico instead of Germany and THEIL told him he had been living in Chicago. I asked him about my wife, who was living in New York and working for a family whose name I do not know, but who lived on the East Side. I asked LEINERT if he would contact her and arrange for me to see her the next evening at the Shelton Hotel, Lexington Avenue and 49th Street. We stayed ^{with} LEINERT until nine or ten o'clock and then returned to the Commodore Hotel and retired.

About noon on Monday, June 22, THEIL and myself arose and after eating went to the movies and then separated and walked around New York. I met THEIL for dinner at a German ^{style} restaurant located on the west side of Lexington Avenue, near 44th Street. After dinner we returned to the hotel, read the papers and then went to bed.

On Tuesday, June 23, we stayed at the hotel until about noon and then we separated and went out and walked around town.

That evening I met LEINERT by arrangement at the Hotel Pennsylvania and we walked to Times Square where we ate dinner at the Crossroads Inn. From this place LEINERT called my wife at her place of employment and made arrangements for me to meet her that same evening at the Hotel Shelton.

After dinner, I left LEINERT and met THEIL at the corner of 44th and Lexington Avenue, at which time he was with an individual whom he introduced to me as TONI. We talked for a few minutes and had a drink and thereafter I

separated from THEIL and TONI and was on my way to meet my wife when I was apprehended by Special Agents from the FBI.

At the time of my apprehension, we were attempting to get located in a place which we could use for a hideout and in this connection I had in the back of my mind a farm in Pennsylvania. We had no specific plans at this time as to any sabotage that we were going to commit, it having been left to our discretion in Germany as to what we would do. It was intended by us that we should get located first and then return to the beach in Florida to get the explosives and put them in a hideout and at that time we could commence our sabotage. This was all in accordance with instructions I had received while in Germany.

At the time of my ^{landing} apprehension, I fully intended to follow my instructions and to sabotage power lines and other facilities that might be suitable, but in the course of my stay I came to the conclusion that our orders were made impossible to fulfill as the means of transportation were too insecure (gas-shortage rationing). I might state generally that I had asked KAPPE before I left Germany about getting back to Germany in case we ran into trouble here, and he said it would not be possible to get back by submarine but should try to get to Chile or the Argentine.

With the exception of LEINERT and TONI, no member of the group contacted any individual in the United States to my knowledge.

In addition to the above, I might state that prior to my last trip to Germany in 1940, I called at the German Consulate in New York and discussed my proposed trip with them. At this time, Mr. MAISCH of the Consulate Office offered to pay my passage to Germany by the way of Lisbon, Portugal but inasmuch as I had sufficient money to pay for the passage, I refused his offer. After my departure from the United States and my arrival in Lisbon, I was advanced part of my passage fare in Lisbon by some person and after my arrival in Berlin I was paid the full amount. While in Germany I was not a member of the Nazi Party nor was I a member prior to my departure for Germany. While in Germany and while I was employed by the Propaganda Ministry, I was a member of the German Labor Front.

I have read this statement consisting of nine pages, and have initialed each page, and it is all true to the best of my knowledge. I have affixed my signature to the last page to signify the truth of this statement.

(signed): _____

WITNESSED:

New York, New York
June 25, 1942

I, RICHARD QUIRIN, make the following statement to supplement the statement I gave on June 21, 22, and 23, 1942, to Special Agent B. F. WIAND, whom I know to be an agent of the Federal Bureau of Investigation. I make this statement voluntarily and on my own free will realizing that I do not have to make the same and that it may be used as evidence in a court of law.

I was born in Berlin, Germany, on April 26, 1908. I do not remember my father's name but my mother's name was HELEN QUIRIN so I took her family name. As a boy I lived in Berlin until I was twelve years old and attended school there. This school had no particular name; it was a public school and I studied the regular subjects receiving average grades. I was a little over fourteen years old when I finished school.

Up to this time I lived with my foster parents ERNST TARTSCH. My mother had left me with them when I was about two years old. I do not remember my foster mother's name but my foster father ERNST TARTSCH worked as a machinist near Berlin. My foster father died when I was around nine years old, and when I was twelve years old, I went to Hanover, Germany, to live with my mother.

My mother owns a small apartment at Seume Strasse 10, and she has always made her living from the money she receives from renting these apartments. I went to school in Hanover until I was fourteen years old and then I went to work for the Schultz Machine Company, where I made 35 to 40 marks a week, working as a machinist helper. I worked here until 1926 when I could not get any work in Germany so I went to work on a farm where I worked for about a year, when I decided to come to the United States.

I received the money to come to the United States from my uncle EMIL QUIRIN, who is now dead but then worked as a customs agent on the border between France and Germany at different cities. He gave me 600 marks, which I later paid back. I then went to Bremen to the American Consul's office and got my papers and I had received an affidavit from my uncle ERNST WIGLEB who married my mother's sister and lived in Schenectady, New York. I left Bremen, Germany, October 17, 1927, on the SS YONK making a third class passenger, arriving in the United States at New York City under the immigration quota. I paid my head tax at the Pier in New York. My uncle met me at the boat on my arrival in this country and took me to Schenectady, New York.

It was not quite a week when I started to work as a tinsmith helper. I think the man's name was BLAIR and he had a tin shop in Schenectady. He paid me \$26 a week while I was with him but I did not stay with him more than two or three months. After my job as helper with the tinsmith, I went to work for the General Electric Company in Schenectady, New York. No one helped me get the job, I got it myself. I did not speak English very well when I came to Schenectady so I went to a night school which was teaching people to speak English. I think it was run in connection with a high school. I went there three or four months. It was after I learned to speak better English that I got this job with General Electric.

My uncle in Schenectady was a sculptor and later had his own business and he had a brother who lived in Amsterdam, New York named WIGLER. I worked for the General Electric Company about three years as a mechanic repairing machines. I worked in the Maintenance Department and we took care of the machinery and made new parts for them. I did not receive any advancement but made \$40 a week and sometimes more for overtime. I continued to work as a tool maker. I was laid off in 1930 because of the depression and after I was laid off, I stayed in Schenectady for several months until my unemployment money ran out, then I came to New York. When I came to New York, I got a room between Brook and Willis Avenues on 138th Street in Bronx, New York. I tried to find work and I met a fellow who lived at this rooming house, whose first name I recall as RUDOLPH and he was a painter. He asked me if I would like to learn to paint and I told him that I wanted some work and later he got me a job painting.

He took me to his boss a Mr. SIMON and I worked for him for about a half a year. Some weeks I would work four or five days and other weeks more, and I received \$4.50 a day, but I started out making \$3 a day. After that I looked for other jobs, most of them were painting. One job that I remember is that we painted in the Biltmore Hotel. While I was painting, I also worked for a Mr. FRAYSTADT. These people I worked for had no offices but would hire me when they needed a painter and I received my pay on the job.

Between 1930 and 1936 I worked at various odd jobs, most of them painting. I did have one job with the Multi-Needle Company for awhile and we made these big quilting machines that made quilts. This place was located near the 99th Street Bridge in Long Island. I left there because there was no more work.

In 1936 I met my wife, whose maiden name was ANNA SESSELMANN. She came from Germany in 1930. I do not know what boat she came over on. I married her in 1937, and she had worked as a cook and doing general house work before I married her. We advertised in the paper for work and later we

were employed by a Mr. W. J. RAUCH. He had a large home up in Chappaqua in Westchester County. Both me and my wife worked for Mr. RAUCH until she returned to Germany in 1939. I worked as a chauffeur and took care of the yard and did odd jobs around the house and she took care of the housework. We first got \$110 a month and our room and board, and then he raised us to \$125 a month.

When I was in Schenectady, I think it was in 1929, I applied for my citizenship papers and received my first papers. I never did become a citizen because I was not sure I was going to stay in the United States. My wife never became a citizen either.

I used to go to Yorkville frequently when we lived in New York and one time I went to a meeting of the Friends of New Germany and they handed me a card and I signed it and I became a member. I think this was in 1933 and I remained a member for about two years. I was a member of the Order Group and I bought myself a uniform, which I wore at meetings and to and from them. I never paraded in this uniform. The only people that I can remember was one fellow named WILLIE NOTTICE, and the leader of the Order Group named HAUPFNER. The fellow who told me to join the Order Group was a fellow named SAND - something, I think it was SANDMAN. We had our meetings in Kreutzer Hall and I never attended any of the camps and I was not an officer and did not have any rank.

I understood the purpose of the Friends of New Germany was for the German born people here to get together, and I think the idea was to help elect presidents of the United States and perhaps to start a movement to get people to know about politics and to learn about the New Germany and make them feel toward Germany that they were building up, etc. It was also to make friends for New Germany and I do not know if they received help from the German Government. About 1934 they were having a lot of trouble because some of the members thought some of the officers were using the money and there were also rumors going around that people who were not citizens should not belong to this organization.

I went to the German Consulate office in New York City to see about this and I talked to a man there whose name I do not know. He told me that German citizens were not to belong to such organizations and told me to go to the organization and get a paper showing that I had resigned. I did this and brought the paper back to him. He told me if I would bring this paper back I could be a member of the Nazi Party. He also told me that the Party was not official in this country and the reason that I should belong to it was that if I returned to Germany, I would immediately become a member. It cost me

83 to join and I signed some papers at the Consulate office. All I did was sign the papers, he did not ask me a lot of questions. I never attended any meetings of this Party in the United States, in fact they never had any meetings that I knew of because the Consul told me that there was nothing of this sort going on.

The only other club I belonged to in New York was a soccer club, the Kolping Society. It is a Catholic Society up in Yorkville somewhere. I am not a Catholic myself and do not attend church but my wife does and sometimes goes. I belonged to this around 1927. This club was merely for young fellows to get together and play soccer and we used to play on a field near the East River. I think this club house was located between 3rd and Lexington Avenue and near 89th Street.

I used to read the newspaper put out by the Friends of New Germany, named, "Deutsches Zeitung."

Since coming to the United States in 1927, I never made any trips back to Germany. The only correspondence I had was with my family over there and then my wife wrote the letters. I heard rumors in 1939 that the German Consulate was paying the way back to Germany for men who had a trade. My wife was homesick and she wanted to go back to Germany and I also wanted to return to Germany for I thought a lot of the German Government and thought it would do a lot for Germany and I sympathized with it. I went to the German Consulate in New York City and told him I wanted to return to Germany and had heard that they were paying peoples' ways back to Germany if they were mechanics. He told me that the German Government would pay my way back to Germany and that I could go back on the SS BREMEN in July of 1939, and they would also pay my wife's way but she was sick so I paid her way and she went back in May of 1939. There were no arrangements made for me to repay this money. When my wife left, I did not continue to live with Mr. RAUCH. I went to live with HENRY BEST in Mount Vernon, New York. He was a painter and I did work for him at one time. He was a friend of ours. Mr. RAUCH offered to let me stay with him but I thought it best to leave because he had to have other people and I stayed with Mr. Best.

Mr. Rauch gave me some work to do in the line of painting and he had a house in Jersey, a summer house, which he used for boating. I cleaned it up and painted it for them to move in. The only conversation I ever had with Mr. Rauch concerning Germany and my views was one time he wanted to know what I thought of Germany, and we discussed it as everyone else did in those days.

The Consulate gave me my ticket to return to Germany on the BREMEN, I think a few days prior to the sailing. I left New York City in July of 1939 on this ship. Before I left I bought ruckwanderer marks with the money I had, at which time I said it was my intention to stay in Germany. The ticket I received for the trip was a regular ticket and I went third class, landing at Bremen, Germany.

On my arrival in Germany I, with several more people that had made the trip with me, were met by a representative of the German Labor Front. We went to a hotel in Bremen where I was interviewed by a man and he asked me what my trade was and where I would like to work. I told him that I would like to work in Braunschweig, Germany, because my wife had a nephew^{there} named ALFONSE HUBER. I also knew that this was where the factory was located that made the People's Car. This factory is the Volkswagenwerk. I stayed in the hotel that night with others who were there the same night I was and it did not cost us anything. The man told me to be at the Volkswagenwerk on a certain day if I could and I went on to meet my wife at her home in Kulmbach, Germany, where she was with her folks, Mr. and Mrs. JACOB SESSELMANN. My wife and I stayed with them about a week and then we took a little trip around Germany and then went to Volkswagenwerk at Braunschweig.

I saw the boss at the factory. I did not know where I was supposed to work but I knew everything had been arranged. I was assigned to work at Volkswagenwerk and was told to go to Volkswagenwerk where a man would show my wife and I some apartments. These apartments belonged to the factory and he showed us some and we picked out one that had a living room, bed room, kitchen, and bath and rented for 35 marks per month. The cheapest of these apartments was 32 marks and the highest was 65 marks. We paid our own gas and electricity. These amounted to about 14 marks a month. I did not sign a lease for the apartment and I could only keep it as long as I worked for the factory.

In the living room, there was a rug, and the rest of the furniture consisted of a couch, four chairs, a table and a china closet. In the kitchen was a regular gas stove with two burners and the other side was for coal. There was no ice box and no refrigerator, but cold running water and a shower in the bath room. The construction of the walls was of plaster and painted, with no wall paper. There were no floor lamps but there were regular curtains. There were no blinds or black-out curtains.

When the war started, however, we were told to buy black paper to put up against the windows. There were wooden varnished floors in the apartments and there were four apartments to a building, two floors and the construction was of stucco. I heated my apartment with stoves in every room.

The fuel was ordered from a coal man for about 300 or 400 pounds, the cost was 10 marks. The coal was rationed after the war started but we could still get enough and it was possible to keep one room at least warm during the winter.

We had electric lights in the apartment and in the bedroom there were two beds and two little tables with lights on them. In the kitchen there was just a table, two chairs, a place for putting dishes, a cabinet, and a sink. Not all the people in Volkswagenwerk lived in places like this; only people from out of town. I think this city, Braunschweig, had a population of about 180,000 and I would say around 10,000 worked at this plant.

I signed a membership card for the Labor Front when I started to work. The dues were according to your earnings. I made 350 to 400 marks a month and my dues were 4 marks a month. In regard to sick benefits or retirement reductions, when I make 350 marks they would take out something like 60 marks a month and it covered sick benefits, old age pensions, and taxes.

After the war started, there was some rationing. A person gets a half a pound of butter a week, about a pound of meat, which is now cut down but if you work in a factory longer than eight hours, you are allowed a little more and you could get an extra card for more meat; you could have about four loaves of bread a week and all the potatoes you wanted. Sugar, I don't know. My wife did the marketing, but she got about a half a pound a week I think. Fruits and vegetables were scarce. Whenever they came in, they were divided among regular customers of the store. At first only three cigarettes were allowed to a person, then six and in some places ten a day.

Automobiles could only be used for business. The people are not exactly discontent. Of course, they do not like to work such long hours but they think it is necessary on account of the war. I worked in the factory from six in the morning until six at night with one hour off for lunch. That was the usual shift. The factory didn't work 24 hours a day. I made jigs and tools and the factory produced tools to build cars. No trucks or airplanes were built here. The cars had four cylinders and I think 25 horse power. The first cars were closed but now they are starting to make open cars, the kind where you leave the top down.

At the factory we wore identification badges which had the insignia of the factory and a number but no picture. We were allowed to go freely through the plant but wore certain colors, the foremen had certain colors and the workers had other colors. My boss was EUGENE GETNER. He has never been in the United States.

The instructions we received in relation to an air raid was to go to the shelter. There was no particular place built for this purpose and we went through the long halls and then down to the basement where there were wash rooms and we had our lockers. This place was used as a shelter in case of an air raid. I don't know whether the city of Braunschweig had air raid shelters or not. The construction of the plant in which I worked was of concrete, having very large windows on top and the sides. We did not have to have electric lights by day but used light only early in the morning when we started to work at about six o'clock as it was still dark then. At that time they had blinds on the top windows and side windows, which were pulled, so that no light would come out. We had no air raid drills but fellows were assigned to keep order in case of air raids.

In case we didn't show up for work, we could be out for one day without notifying the plant. We did not have individual telephones in our apartments but there was a public booth at the corner that we used. I had no radio because they were too expensive. I brought a small one from America with me but it was no good and I did not use it. My radio was not examined on my arrival and we were not required to listen to certain programs. However, there were certain restrictions and we could only listen to German programs.

We brought our lunch to work with us and had an hour for it, eating in the hall provided for that purpose. You could buy hot meals there too. We were given hot barley coffee with milk but with no sugar, I don't think. It was weaker coffee than they use in this country. We could not get any additional milk at the plant but at home we could buy about a quart a day, depending on the number of children in the family. I had one child named ROSEMARIE, who was born October 4, 1940. You could also buy beer, as much as you wanted, but it was much lighter and not as intoxicating, with much less alcohol. Soap was rationed too. I don't know how much was allowed. Cans of vegetables were scarce. Tooth paste was easy to get and we were required to save the tubes. There was no ice cream at all but they had ices. We were given eggs according to the supply but never more than six per person per week. In the spring and summer there were more, in the winter less.

In relation to entertainment, we could do as we pleased except dancing which was not permitted. They had picture shows which were regular movies similar to the ones they show in this country. Transportation on the railroads was only restricted on weekends and holidays when the workers at the plants wanted to return to their homes.

I received two week's vacation every year and was allowed to travel and received pay for my vacation. During one time when I was sick, I received compensation from the sick benefit fund, which I would say was about 65% of my pay. The doctor was friendly and if I needed hospital treatment, they would

free

have furnished that free, and then my wife would get money to live on if I stayed home. There were no particular regulations about being on the streets at night. There were guards at the factory to watch the doors and it was fenced in but there were no soldiers. They had some Italian laborers working on the factory enlarging it, and I believe a few French war prisoners.

When I first went to work for Volkswagenwerk, I became acquainted with a fellow I knew as HENRY HEINCK. He also has used the name of HENRY KAYMAR. He ran a drilling machine and worked at the same place I did in this factory.

I think it was in February, WALTER KAPPE came to Volkswagenwerk and made a speech to all the people who had come back to Germany from the United States. I had heard about him in the United States and that he was a speaker and he talked to us and told us that we probably were not content with the conditions there but that if we would just be content for a little while, conditions would get better, or something like that. He also said that people would like it better as they went along. I did not talk to him personally that night.

On the next day HENRY came to me and told me that he had heard that they were looking for some fellows that would go on a trip to America to do some work in connection with the war for Germany. I said I would think it over and that I thought I would be interested. I think it was in April that HENRY showed me a letter from WALTER KAPPE and it had my name in the letter telling us to come to a certain farm which was located near a lake in a little town called Brandenburg. HENRY and I took the letter to the office at Volkswagenwerk and asked them if we could get off to go. They said that they would see and a little later they told us it would be all right and that we could go. The letter told us to bring some sporting clothes and to report at this farm on a certain date. I went on to Berlin to visit my mother and I stayed there and left in time to get to the farm on the date I was supposed to be there. On the way to the farm, when I got off the bus, I met HENRY at the bus stop and we went to the farm on a lake called Quins Lake.

When we got there, there was no one there. We were the first ones and we gave him our names and he showed us our rooms and we put our stuff in the rooms and then we went out and walked around the farm. Later in the day KAPPE came to the farm and met us, telling us to stick around the place and take it easy until the rest of the boys arrived. They came in the next few days, one or two at a time. I think there were nine that arrived and their

names are SCOTTI, HENRY HEINICK, PETE BUNGER, GEORGE DASCH, EDDIE, HERMAN BILL and JERRY SWENSON. I think Herman's or Bill's last name was NICHOLAS or something like that. I cannot remember the other's last name, and Scotty left in a short time.

I think we arrived on Tuesday and during this week the other fellows were arriving and we just fooled around until Dr. SCHULTZ and Dr. KOENIG arrived on Monday. I think this was around the middle of April. Before Dr. Schultz and Dr. Koenig arrived, KAPPE talked to all of us saying we were to be instructed in explosives and were being sent over to America to do some sabotage work, although he did not say how we were to be sent to America. A few days later he mentioned that we were to go on a submarine. He said that this work was one part of the war and some had to go to the front and some had to do other things and that this work would be important and help Germany win the war. This was the only time he spoke to us when we were in a group before Dr. Schultz and Dr. Koenig arrived on Monday to instruct us. At that time he introduced them to us telling us that they were to instruct us in the use of explosives.

I don't know exactly what this farm was used for but one day I was talking to a farmer and he told me that they were just keeping up the place and at one time there had been German pioneer troops there training. The German pioneer troops are the ones who go ahead of the soldiers, tear up mine fields, and prepare the way for them.

On this farm we lived in one building, which was a regular farm house and there was another building there which appeared to be a garage on top of which there was the school, and there were what looked like two old barracks and some other farm buildings there but we only used the farm house in which I slept and the garage where they had the classes. On the second floor of this garage there were tables, benches and a small chemical laboratory. We used a small part of the grounds on this farm, which was close to this garage and in one place they had a big hole dug where you could set off explosives and the stuff would not fly around.

The next few days we had school, only a few hours a day, and they explained to us what an explosion is, and what a detonation is and theoretical things about explosives, and they told us that this part of the work did not amount to much; it would just give us an idea of what it was all about.

Toward the end of the week they explained to us certain explosives. They mentioned dynamite, nitroglycerin, TNT, and black powder was in the fuses that we were to use.

This schooling started about the middle of April, 1942 and, altogether, we received about three weeks schooling. They gave us different formulas and told us how to make explosives. Then we made these explosives from these formulas and experimented with them in blowing up things on the farm. I remember that I blew up a stump. I cannot remember any of these formulas but we made up explosives from them and they worked real well.

During the school, they showed us some yellow blocks of explosive about six inches wide and eight inches long. They told us this explosive was very stable, that you could drop it, saw it, drill holes in it and you could even burn it and that it would not explode. They said it took a detonator to explode this yellow block which they told us was T.N.T, I think. They also showed us an explosive that was black and looked like a lump of coal. They told us that it was the same stuff as the yellow blocks and could be held in the same way. They also explained to us the different types of fuse, one of them was a white fuse that was to be used with the detonator caps. They also explained another fuse to us that could be used to set off several charges at once. This was a quick burning fuse and they told us that this would be the type of fuse to blow down an electric power line, that is, we could blow up all four posts at the same time with just one blast. They told us that the only time we would have to use this was when the legs of the tower were more than a yard apart. They also told us in connection with the other fuse that a safe distance was one yard. They explained to us about detonator caps. They told us that they were very dangerous, and that you should not monkey around with them because they might go off. They told us to be sure and crimp it with pliers when it was fastened to the fuse so that it would not slip off.

I remember that they explained three kinds of caps to us. One was an ordinary explosive cap which was hooked to the fuse. Then there was another cap to be used for explosives that could be used only with a time clock which they showed us and which I will explain later. This fuse fit into the time clock and at the time the clock was set it would explode. They also showed us another cap that was to be used in connection with the time clock for incendiaries or setting off fires. They also showed us some timing devices and one was a fourteen day clock and all you had to do was set it and place the fuse in it and put in the explosive. These devices also had a metal tube that fit into them so that if you did not have the caps that were made for these clocks, you could use other caps. Another timing device they showed us was by taking a watch and by hooking electric wires to the hands. These wires were hooked up with batteries and bending the hands so that when they came together they would touch and this would set off the explosive. They showed us another one that was made up by using a tin can with a wire in the bottom of it and a hole punched in the bottom of the can. Then you hooked a wire into a board or

something that would float on top and then hook these wires with batteries and when water ran out of the can they would come together and set off the explosive. I remember they mentioned a way to make one by using dried peas and when water was put on them they would swell but I do not remember exactly how it was made but I think it was something like the water can device.

In connection with these devices, they were drawn for us on the blackboard by either DR. KOENIG or DR. SCHULTE but I do not remember very much about them. They also explained to us some incendiary devices used for starting fires. One I remember was a pencil which looked like an ordinary pencil and we were told these were to be used on warehouses and placed where war supplies were stored. This pencil had two compartments in it, having acid on one side and on the other side was another chemical that started a fire. To use the pencil you unscrewed it, turned it over and then turned another screw that broke the glass so that acid could get to the metal plate, and then screwed it together again and placed it in whatever you wanted to set on fire. They told us that these pencils would go off any time up to two hours and that it depended on the weather, whether it was hot, or in what kind of room it was placed. They also told us that we could use gasoline or benzine by pouring it on whatever we wanted to burn and then setting it off with fuse. They also gave us some instructions how to mix up some stuff to start fires and one of these was to mix some chemicals, I do not remember, with some sawdust wrap it up in a package. I think it had some saltpeter in it, and then putting a fuse to this package and set it off with the fuse. We made up some of this stuff and experimented with it and it made a big fire.

I remember now in connection with the detonator caps, that one of the Doctors in explaining them, telling how powerful they were, put one in a small pipe, touched a fuse and he lighted this fuse and it went off and opened up the pipe. In connection with the yellow blocks I have mentioned and the black lumps, the Doctors took us to this hole on the farm I have mentioned and showed us how to blow up a railroad rail. They had a railroad rail there which was tied down with timbers and they instructed us that two pounds of this yellow stuff or the black stuff would be sufficient to blow up a rail, and that you should place it on the side of the rail, then drill a hole in it, fix a fuse to the cap, light it, and it would blow up the rail. They did this, and after they lighted the fuse, we ran away until the explosion went off and then went back and looked at the rail and it had blown it in two and also blown a chunk out of it. I remember that they also mentioned in connection with blowing up rails, that you could fix a device so that the explosion would go off when the engine passed over it. It was something that made contact when the engine ran over it and I remember you had to use a battery with it and some wires but I do not remember anything else about it. They told us that two pounds was sufficient to blow up a railroad rail and that we should use this as a guide when we wanted to blow up anything else.

In connection with our sabotage work in the United States, KAPPE told us that we were to disable armament factories, airplane factories, factories where they made airplane parts and any factory that was making war materials. We were to disable these factories by blowing up power lines and blowing up railroads which were used by factories in getting their materials. I remember that I asked GEORGE if they had told him any certain factories we were supposed to blow up and they may have mentioned some but if they did I do not remember and he told me that he would find out about that.

When we were at this farm and experimenting in the fields with these explosives, they gave us a black outfit to wear, which had black trousers, black coat and black cap. All other times we wore our own clothes.

In connection with obtaining explosives in the United States, they told us that we could buy some of these chemicals that I cannot remember, in drug stores.

They told us that another way we would sabotage things in the United States was by putting sand in oil boxes of trains and locomotives, and also by putting emery dust in these.

In connection with our training at this farm, when we got up in the morning, we had exercises first, then we had breakfast. The meals I think were prepared by the caretaker of this farm. Then all of the fellows who were being trained got together and we read English magazines and newspapers. Some of the magazines I remember were Life, Saturday Evening Post and the Times newspaper. The latest of these and one I don't remember was dated in January, 1942. We also spoke English among ourselves so that we could learn to speak English better and get used to it again. Sometimes we would receive instructions in the morning and sometimes in the evening, and they usually lasted for about three hours a day. Then we would play games and exchange ideas on what we would do when we got in America. These ideas were about getting accustomed to our surroundings and trying to find people that would be able to help us. All during this time we received instruction in explosives. Also while we were together, we made up stories between ourselves as to what we would say in case we were caught. I remember the story I made up to say that I was from Chicago and that I had worked on farms and I was born in Portugal and that my father and mother died shortly after I came to the United States and that I was traveling over the country. As we had these talks together, KAPPE would usually give us his ideas on what he would do. KAPPE mentioned one time that he liked the way people lived in the United States and we all did that.

It was understood when we went to the farm that we were to come to the United States to commit sabotage against war industries to benefit Germany and help hinder production in the United States. They told us that

this was just as important as soldiers on the Russian front. KAPPE told us that DASCH was to be the leader of our group and that when we came to the United States we were to lay low for awhile and get accustomed to it again. He also told us not to live too expensively and to save our money because we would probably have a hard time getting any more.

GEORGE told me that we were supposed to go to Chicago.

I remember one time KAPPE asked me if I knew anything about the Morse Code and I told him that I did not and that is the last time anyone said anything to me about it.

It was understood that GEORGE DASCH, being our leader, would tell us what to do when we got to the United States and that he had received some instructions that we knew nothing about.

KAPPE told us that if we had friends in the United States whom we thought would work for Germany, we should discuss it among our group and all agree on whether it would be a good thing to go see them, and it was understood that GEORGE had to know about the people first that we were to come into contact with and if we got his approval and we all agreed on it, then we would contact them and see if they would help in our sabotage work.

GEORGE also told me one time that I was to look out for HENRY. One reason for this was because sometimes he would get drunk and would not know when to stop drinking.

While we were at the farm, there were two groups. In our group was GEORGE DASCH, HENRY HEINCK, PETER BURGER, JERRY SWENSON and myself. There was another group there being trained and in this group were HERMAN, BILL, EDDIE and HERBIE. Either BILL or HERMAN used the last name of NICKOLAS or NICKELSON. The reason I do not know their names is because each of these groups was trained together and we would be doing something while they were doing something else. I know that the second group I have mentioned has come to the United States on a submarine. Also, while we were at the farm, all of us did not use our right names. I used the name RICHARD QUINTAS and they also called me DICK.

I remember the last night we were at the farm, DR. KOENIG or DR. SCHULTZ told us that we were to play like we were going to blow up a manufacturing plant. They pointed out a certain spot that was supposed to be this factory and this was to take place at night and they were to be the guards at the factory. We were to work in pairs; I worked with GEORGE DASCH. The day before GEORGE and I had prepared an incendiary package and I fixed up a watch as I have previously explained, with wires so that the hands would make contact

and set off the incendiary. He also used batteries. The Doctors told us that we were not to make any noise and to sneak into this spot and place our explosives and try to do this without their seeing us. GEORGE and I went to our spot and placed this stuff and the instructors started throwing fire-crackers at us to try to scare us. It was understood that this package we used was not to burn and we were merely playing like it would burn, but some of the stuff some of the fellows used did actually burn or blow up. I think the reason they did not want ours to burn was because it would destroy the clock and everything which we were using. I think PETE and HENRY worked together on this night and I do not know what they did.

One day while we were at the farm, I went with KAPPE and I filled out a paper. I was told that my wife was to receive \$300.00 marks a month which was for her and my daughter, Rose Marie's support. KAPPE also told me that if I was permanently hurt, I would receive a pension and that if anything happened to me, my wife would get less money but she would be taken care of. He told me that after the war was over, we were to return to Germany at which time we would be well cared for. While there, we also were told that if we were arrested, we were not to talk or discuss anything about our training or anything about ourselves. They also told us at the farm that both my group and the other group were coming to the United States by submarine. They told my group and the other group that we were the first groups being sent to the United States but I do not know whether they were going to send more.

I remember now that there was one fellow who came there when we first got there and he was there for only a few days and left. I do not remember his name.

After we had completed our course at the farm, KAPPE told us that we were to report back to Berlin about May 12th at Ranta Strasse 5, which I think was KAPPE'S office. He told us we could have a little vacation but cautioned us not to say anything to anyone about what we were going to do, not even to our wives.

They had given us some money when we came to the farm and when we left, HENRY and I went together to Braunschweig, Germany where my wife was still living in our apartment. I got my wife and baby and went to Kulmbach, Germany, to her folk's home. Her father's name is JACOB SESSLMANN and he is a farmer. I do not remember my mother-in-law's first name. I believe we left the farm about the end of April and I stayed with my wife at Kulmbach with her parents and left just in time to get to Berlin around the 12th of May. I told my wife that I was going into the German Army and that with the work that I would be doing I would not be able to write to her. I told her nothing else

about what I was going to do. When I arrived in Berlin, we all met at this office I have mentioned and the fellows who were there were GEORGE DACH, HENRY HEINCK, PATE BURGER, JERRY SWENSON, EDDIE, BILL, HERMAN and HERBIE. He told us that there was nothing else to do; that we were to report every other day as the date had not been fixed yet when we were supposed to leave. While we were in Berlin, I don't remember just when, KAPPE gave each of us a Social Security card with our names filled in on it. He filled in with the name I was using which was RICHARD QUINTAS. He also gave us a Registration card which he told us we would have to have as everyone in the United States had to register for the draft. It was already filled in and I just signed my name to it. He also paid us the money we had spent for carefrees for the trips I had made to Braunschweig and to my wife's home and back.

While I was in Berlin, I stayed with my mother, HELEN QUIRIN. She lives with her sister, BERTA RHEIL and they live at 65 Murnberger Strasse where my mother's sister has a rooming house. My mother supports herself from the income she receives from the house she owns in Hanover, Germany, and her sister's husband works as a bookkeeper somewhere in Berlin but I do not know his first name.

We went back to the office several times to see KAPPE before he told us we were ready to leave. I think the day before we left the explosives we were to use in connection with our work in the United States, were brought to KAPPE'S office. They were packed in four boxes, wooden boxes, eighteen inches wide and a yard long. I handled only two of these boxes. One weighed about seventy pounds I would say and the other about half that much.

He told us that the next day we were supposed to meet at a station at a time he set and the boxes were brought there too and we took them in the train and went to Paris and there we stayed in a hotel. We arrived in Paris, the boxes I think were kept at the station, and we went to a hotel. When we got to the hotel we were given some French money by KAPPE and told to go out and have a good time. In Paris we just ran around over the City, sight-seeing and having a good time.

About three or four days before we left Paris, BILL, HERMAN, HERBIE AND EDDIE left Paris to get on a submarine to come to the United States. The reason I know this is that they told me. On the day we were to leave for the United States there was to be five in our group, JERRY SWENSON was to be the fifth man. He came down with a venereal disease and could not go. However, he went with us to the place where we got on the submarine.

When we left Berlin to go to Paris, KAPPE was wearing a German Army Officer's uniform. He may have been a Lieutenant. We wore our regular civilian clothes. I forgot to state that before we left Berlin, we were told to bring our clothes, the ones we had bought in the United States before we came back to Germany and I had a brown gabardine suit that I had bought in the United States before I came back to Germany and I was wearing this suit. It consisted of three pieces, a coat, trousers and vest.

When we got ready to leave the hotel to go to the submarine, we put on a uniform which is used by the German soldiers for work, which was gray pants and gray jacket to match and a regular Army cap. This cap had on the front of it an eagle with a triangle and a button in the middle that we call a "Cokarde."

We traveled from Paris to a place which is near Bordeaux, France. I do not know the exact spot, by train and we had the boxes with us. When we got to the station I think a Naval officer met us and took us to a place where a submarine was tied up. The submarine was tied up on the opposite side of the ship. You could not see it from shore. It was painted gray. It had painted on the tower a pig with spikes on it. It was painted with all colors. We arrived at this place about eight o'clock in the evening and we went straight from the car to the submarine. Our own clothes were already taken on to the submarine along with the four boxes. JERRY SWENSON, I think, went to a hotel to wait for KAPPE. When we got to the submarine, we were met by the Commander and he and KAPPE exchanged salutes. We went with him down into the submarine by walking on a gangplank to this ship I have mentioned and then walking over the ship and down a stairway or ladder to the submarine. When we got on the submarine, there were four of us not counting KAPPE and they were myself, PETE BURGER, GEORGE DASCH AND HENRY HEINCK. The Captain, KAPPE and the four of us sat down at a table where we had a drink. KAPPE only remained there a few minutes and each one merely wished the other goodbye and good luck.

I forgot to say that before we got on the submarine we went to a hotel in a little town. I think that the name of this little town was Lorraine, France.

The submarine, I would say was about two hundred and ten feet. When we left France, we stayed on top of the water and we were out on deck, and there were two boats that seemed to be guiding us out of the harbor. We stayed on top of the water all that night. During the next day we were under water all the time. The next evening we came up again and we stayed up on top of water part of the next day but we went under part of the time. One time I remember we had to dive in a hurry because they thought they had seen an airplane.

I think we left France around the last of May and while we were

on the submarine, GEORGE DASCH gave me a canvas money belt in which he said there was Four Thousand Dollars. He also gave me about Three Hundred Dollars to put in my pocket. When I received this belt I was dressing and he brought it over to me although one time I saw that he had a big pile of money with him. He did not discuss the money at all on this submarine. On the way over, the Captain told us that we were to be landed on Long Island and GEORGE told us that when we landed we were to take the boxes back up on the beach and bury them.

When we were getting near Long Island, it was very foggy and we were on top of the water part of the time and under part of the time. When we came near land, though, we came in under water and then the submarine came to the surface and we were told to get ready. We still had on these uniforms that I have previously mentioned and I left my Army cap in the submarine. We were told by GEORGE DASCH when we got on the beach that we were to take off these clothes and put them in a sack and sailors who were to accompany us would take them back to the submarine, and then we were to change into our own clothes.

We came up on deck of the submarine and there were about fourteen members of the crew on the deck and I believe the submarine had about forty crew members. When we got on deck there was a rubber boat tied to the side of the submarine with a line tied on the back of it. I think the reason for this line was because it was so foggy that they might not be able to find the submarine when they started back. There were two sailors in the boat and the boat had regular oars. The boxes were already placed in the boat. The Captain wished us good luck. He stepped into the boat and started rowing for shore. I think we rowed for about ten or fifteen minutes. Then we got to the surf it was pretty rough and when we got on the beach I carried two of the boxes back up on the beach and then I changed clothes. GEORGE said he was going out to look around. I forgot to say that when we left the submarine I had on a pair of blue swimming trunks with a white belt on under my uniform. After we got up on the beach, PHIL came running back and said that GEORGE had met a watchman but that everything was all right - we were supposed to go ahead so we very hurriedly changed our clothes and I do not know whether we got all of it in the bag and one of them was supposed to take the bag back to the sailors to be taken back to the submarine, but I do not know whether they took them or not. We changed clothes and took the boxes a little further back on the beach and we had two trench shovels we were to use to bury these boxes which we had gotten from the submarine. These were short shovels about two feet long with a cross bar on them. I also buried the boxes and pretty soon GEORGE came up and we all left for the road. We all got scared when we heard that GEORGE had run into a watchman.

After we got together, we went back up the road and laid down and hid for awhile. During this time there were searchlights from land shining

around and at one time I heard a noise and we thought this noise was made by a submarine taking off. On this night, it was very foggy and you could only see about ten yards ahead of you. At times the fog shifted a little bit and you could see a little farther. While we were laying together up near the road, GEORGE mentioned that he thought he had lost a note book.

I have been shown a vest which is brown gabardine and I have identified it as my vest belonging to the suit that I brought over with me from Germany. The reason I know it is my vest is because it has a tear in the back on the right side and on the front there was a cleaning tag on the tip of the vest on the right side which I tore off and I remember there remained several white stitches on the inside of the vest on this tip. I recall last having this vest in my possession when I left the submarine and I do not know when I lost it or that I had lost it until it was shown to me. I purchased this suit I think around 1930, at Crawford's Clothing store which is located on 86th Street in Yorkville.

We laid in the sand there for awhile and then we walked in the sand away from the beach until we came to a road which I think was a concrete road or asphalt. When we came to this road, we turned left and along the side of this road there was some shrubbery and we walked behind the shrubbery to our left until we came to what looked like a country road and we turned right for just a little while and then we went into another road which we followed. That led us to the railroad tracks. We followed the railroad tracks until we came to a station which was 'Mansett, Long Island. We waited there on the station platform on a bench and it was daylight when we got there. I think we landed from the submarine around one o'clock in the morning on June 13, 1942. We sat down for awhile when we got to the station to wait for it to get light. We waited for about two hours until a train came along and GEORGE bought the tickets for all of us in the station, for Jamaica, Long Island.

We arrived in Jamaica, I think, around nine thirty o'clock in the morning and we agreed that HENRY and I would start together and that PATE and DASH would go together. We separated at the station. I think GEORGE mentioned one time that we should check into the Chesterfield Hotel. They did not tell us where they were going and we arranged to meet at Grant's Tomb I think on Saturdays and Wednesdays at six o'clock at night and we also made definite arrangements to go there the next day at six o'clock in the evening.

HENRY and I went to some stores near the railroad station in Jamaica; I bought a pair of slacks and a shirt and I threw my other clothes that were in a bundle, in a wastepaper can. I think HENRY bought the same

stuff that I did. I do not think he threw his suit away. We went from there on the subway over to New York and we did not want to look around for the Chesterfield Hotel, but before this we went to Macy's where I bought a suitcase and some toilet articles and other clothing. We were at Pennsylvania Station and I asked some fellow standing there where was a good hotel that was not too high priced and he told us to go to the Martinique.

We checked in there in the afternoon and I registered as RICHARD QUINTAS of Schenectady or Albany, New York. We got a double room and it cost us \$5.00 a day. We remained in this hotel for two days and checked out on Monday because HENRY and I found a room at 149 West 76th Street, New York City. We intended to remain at this room for some time.

On Saturday night, we just fooled around and on Sunday we met PETE and GEORGE at Grant's Tomb at around six p.m. GEORGE told me at this time that they were staying at the New Yorker Hotel but I later learned that this was not true because PETE told me that they had stayed at the Governor Clinton Hotel all the time. When we met at Grant's Tomb, I walked with PETE and we talked together and HENRY walked with GEORGE. When HENRY and I got together again he told me that GEORGE had said that on account of the guard, we would leave the explosives where they were, it was not good to go back for them.

I met PETE the following day at which time HENRY was with me and I think this was on Tuesday, June 16th and I gave PETE our new address on West 76th Street. While we were together, he said it was good to be together because he was all alone. I forgot to say that GEORGE told us when we were at Grant's Tomb that he was going to leave town for a few days, but did not say where he was going.

That day I think we went out to dinner together and on Wednesday, we met again, June 17th, and we went to Rogers Peet, a men's clothing store at 41st Street and 8th Avenue, where PETE bought a jacket and I bought a suit and they told us they would be ready for us on Saturday, June 20th at three o'clock and we arranged to meet there at that time to get these clothes. I think PETE gave me his address at the Governor Clinton Hotel on Wednesday, June 17th, 1942 and I think the room number was 1421. I was down to the hotel a few times after that and one night I stayed all night with PETE.

We mentioned at times what would happen if we got caught and we talked about what we would say and we thought it would be all over in case we were caught.

I am a citizen of Germany and a member of the Nazi Party and I feel that my loyalty is to Germany.

I was not forced to come to the United States and I volunteered for this proposition. I volunteered after I was made acquainted with it. I know that I was to work for the benefit of the German Government in this war by doing what I could in the United States to hinder production of war supplies and materials. At the time I was in school in Germany and at the time I boarded the submarine, it was my intention to come to the United States and do this work and if I had not been apprehended it is possible that I might have carried out my instructions although I am not sure. I promised KAPPE in Germany when I took this job to do sabotage in the United States that I would do it. I do not feel myself any different from any soldier over there as I felt that it was my duty to do something for the Fatherland, being a German citizen and being loyal to Germany. Since my arrival in the United States I have not talked with any of the people that I knew when I was here before.

I have not mentioned that while I was on the farm they instructed us how to write with invisible ink. This was prepared by using aspirin tablets and alcohol and water. They told us another way was by wetting a sheet of paper and placing it on glass; then taking another sheet of paper and putting it on top of this piece of paper and writing with a pencil. In using alcohol and aspirin, we used a stick with cotton on the end of it to write with and it disappeared as you wrote. The reason they told us they were giving us this training was so that we could write to each other while we were in the United States. They did not give me the names of anyone in the United States to contact and I received no names in Germany to write to nor was I furnished with any secret message or information in secret ink or code when I left from Germany.

I want to explain that they told us the way to develop this secret writing was for the one where you used a wet paper with another paper over it and wrote with a pencil. You put it in water and you can read the message. To bring out the message written with alcohol and aspirin tablet, you merely took alcohol and wrote over it with a piece of cotton and then it would appear and disappear again and when the writing appeared it was reddish in color. We tried this with some they furnished us at the farm and it worked all right.

I forgot to mention that when we were in France, GEORGE gave each of us a book of what he told me was regular matches and he told us we should have some matches from the United States on us and I used some of these matches to light cigarettes and they worked all right. He never said at any time that they were to be used for secret writing and I knew nothing about any such matches and they told me nothing about them.

I have made this statement, consisting of 21 pages, on June 25th, June 27th and June 28th, 1942 and I have read this statement aloud in the presence of B.F. WIAND and H.G. FOSTER, whom I know to be Special Agents of the

Federal Bureau of Investigation and I state that it is true and correct to the best of my knowledge and belief. I have also signed each page of this statement.

Special Agents of the Federal
Bureau of Investigation
607 U.S. Court House
Foley Square
New York, New York

New York, New York
June 25, 1942

I, Werner Thiel, make the following voluntary statement to J. D. McKinney and J. J. Gleason, whom I know to be Special Agents of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, Department of Justice. I make this statement freely and voluntarily, no coercion or promises having been made to me to do so, knowing that it may be used against me in courts.

I, Werner Thiel, was born March 29, 1907, at Essen, Germany, being one of nine children, which family consists of four brothers and four sisters besides myself. My father's name is Gustav Adolf Thiel; my mother's name is Louise Thiel, nee Frenkler, who are both presently living at 17 Haydn Street, Dortmund, Germany. My brothers' names are Adolf Gustav, who is 39 years of age and employed as a superintendent of a factory at Hamburg, Germany; Herbert Emil, who is 34 years of age, presently in the German army, stationed in Norway; Alfred Henry, who would be 31 years of age, but who was killed January, 1942, in the Russian campaign in the Donets Basin, and Guenter Otto, 22 years of age, who is in the army also, presently convalescing from the loss of his left eye. Our sisters are Agathe Thiel, who is 38 years of age and resides at home and who is employed in office work; Hilde Thiel, who is 36 years of age and resides at home and is employed in office work; Liesel (Louise), 27 years of age, who resides at home and is employed in office work, and Jennie Thiel, who is 24 years of age and resides at home, where she helps my mother in her house duties.

I was educated in the public schools at Dortmund, Germany, from the spring of 1913, when I was six years of age, until I completed my eight years' course during the spring of 1921. At this time, I commenced serving an apprenticeship as a machinist in repair shops at the German railroads at Dortmund, Germany, which I completed April, 1925. However, during this period of time, I continued my education by attending the Gewerber (commercial) school at Dortmund, in the evenings during the year of 1922. In 1923, I started to night school at the Westphalen High School at Dortmund, which course I completed in 1925, which was equivalent to a complete high school education. In 1925, which was at the completion of my apprenticeship, I obtained work in a small firm, whose name I cannot recall, but which was engaged in making bicycle equipment.

This employment continued until the fall of 1925, when the firm became bankrupt, which resulted in my being laid off. In the fall of 1925 until April, 1927, which is the date of my departure for the United States, I was unable to find work. During this period of time, I remained at home and was supported by my parents.

I arrived in the United States some time in April, 1927, at the Port of New York, on the "S. S. Cleveland" of the Hamburg-American Line, and from New York I immediately went to Detroit, where I lived for a couple of weeks with a family named Neumann, who were related to an uncle of mine.

Shortly after my arrival in Detroit, I obtained employment with the Ford Motor Company at Flat Rock, Michigan, as a tool and die maker. For this I received \$6.00 a day. This employment continued up until 1929, when I was ~~paid off~~ ^{resigned}. I was then out of work for approximately two months and then became employed by the Detroit Bodies Company in Detroit, Michigan, which continued for four months, when I then resigned. Approximately two weeks later, I obtained work with the General Motors Corporation experimental department in sheet metals.

I remained there for several months and then resigned and went to work for Peerless Pattern Company, Detroit, Michigan, where I worked as a metal pattern maker and later as an inspector, but due to hard times, in November, 1929 I was laid off.

I remained unemployed from November, 1929 until April, 1930, at which time I went to work for the Fisher Bodies Company, which work lasted for six weeks. I was then laid off because of this being seasonal work. While at Fisher's, I received \$60.00 a week. On May 15, 1930, I obtained work with the Chevrolet Motors Company at Flint, Michigan, which lasted for about four months, up until October, 1930, when I was laid off again, this also being seasonal work.

At this time, I came to New York City, which was in October, 1930, and remained unemployed until January, 1931, when I obtained a job as handy man at Hunter's Island Inn, which is just above City Island, New York, at which time I continued this work until May, 1931, when I resigned to get back into my own trade as a machinist. Finding myself unable to get a job in this line of work, in August or September, 1931, I took a job as waiter and porter at the Home for Old and Infirm, which is located at West 105th Street. I remained at this position for a period of three years, up until June, 1934, when I resigned to take a job at Hammond, Indiana.

Around the end of June, 1934, I obtained a job at the Betz Company, at Hammond, Indiana, as a benchman, making surgical instruments. A friend of mine, named Tony Cramer, whom I had known in Detroit, Michigan, in 1929, advised me of there being the possibility of obtaining work at Hammond because he was employed at Hammond, Indiana, at that time. However, times being bad, I was laid off from work at the Betz Company around May or June, 1935, at which time I obtained a job with the Kellogg Construction Company, whose main office is around Jersey City, New Jersey, and which was, at that time, erecting an oil refinery at East Chicago, Indiana. My employment with

the Kellogg Construction Company was as a pipe-fitter's helper and later as a pump mechanic's helper, for which job I received \$1.10 an hour. I remained with this firm for several months, until the refinery was completed, at which time the Wadham Oil Company, for whom the refinery was being built, hired me to take care of the pumps.

I remained at this position until January, 1936, when I was laid off, and at this time obtained a job with the Pacific Pump Company at Los Angeles, California. This employment was commenced some time around March, 1936. Being unable to do the lathe work to conform with their standards, I was laid off after about two months.

I then took a sight-seeing trip from Los Angeles to San Diego, then back to San Francisco, and from there to Hammond, Indiana, at which place I arrived around the end of May, 1936. I then obtained a job as water tender at the St. Mary's Hospital at Hammond, Indiana, where my friend Tony Kramer was also employed. About this time, while I was employed there, Tony Kramer, my friend, made a trip to Germany to see his relatives.

This job lasted until December 1, 1936, when I resigned and went to Fort Myers, Florida, and where I invested \$300.00 in a friend's bake shop and delicatessen store. This friend was an acquaintance of mine named Tillman, who was a German baker who resided near Hammond, Indiana. My investment of \$300.00 in the bake shop business was lost because of bad business, and, on May 1, 1937, I left Tillman in Fort Myers, Florida, and came to New York, where I obtained work with Sals Brothers, a fountain pen concern located at 28th Street near Sixth Avenue, as a lathe man. I remained at this position until August, 1937, receiving \$25.00 a week.

At this time I was advised by an acquaintance named Frank, whose last name I cannot recall, that the Budd Company at Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, was hiring people, so I then went to Philadelphia and obtained a job in the Budd Company's auto die shop, which lasted for a few weeks, up until October, 1937. This also being seasonal work, I was then laid off. I then returned to New York City in October, 1937, and remained unemployed until January, 1938, living on approximately \$200.00 which I had saved.

Natish
In January, 1938, I went to work with the Netisch Gear Works, Brooklyn, New York, as a lathe man, which I continued until March, 1941, when I returned to Germany by way of San Francisco, Tokyo, and Moscow, at the expense of the German Consul at New York City.

I wish to state, at this time, that I am a member of the National Socialist Party in Germany. Before 1927, in Germany, I was not affiliated with this party, inasmuch as it at that time was very small. My father, Gustav Adolf, at that time always voted the Democratic ticket. In 1933, while I was in New York, I became interested in the rise of National Socialism in Germany. During this period of time, the Bund was founded, which was called "Friends of New Germany," Fritz Gissebl being the leader. In October, 1933, I joined this society, paying monthly dues, and managed to attend a few weekly meetings at Lexington Avenue and 85th Street, Turner Hall. At this time, the society was formed to fight anti-German propaganda and boycott in this country and did not have any uniforms. At this time, too, the society was non-political.

In 1934, when I went to Hammond, Indiana, I got together with a couple of fellows -- there were only about ten -- and we founded a local group of this society. I became the assistant leader. ^{Bill} Paul Lange was the leader of the group at that time, and in a little while there were about thirty-two members. About 1935 I left the Bund, after having had an argument with a member, but after a short while I became a member again. I figured it would not make any difference if I really dropped out for a short while or not.

Then I went to ^{California} Florida. I did not have anything to do with the group out there. I came back to Hammond and I was not active any more. Of course, my activities as assistant leader really ended before I left for California, and then I was not anything more than only a member of the society. In 1936 I went to Florida and ever since I have had no connection with the Bund any more. The Bund became a strictly political organization at this time under a different name, and I didn't think it right that I, as a German citizen, should mix in American politics. In 1937, I came to New York. Ever since I left the Bund, I attended only one rally in Madison Square Garden in 1938.

In 1938, while at New York City, I applied for party membership in the National Socialist Party, through the German Consul's office in New York City. Around the early part of 1939, I became a member, paying dues of \$1.00 a month at the Consul's office, and was listed as being a member of the NSDAP in the Ausland Group. This membership continued until I left the United States for Germany. While in New York, I was only an independent member of the NSDAP, because we didn't have any local group or activities. Upon my return to Germany in 1941, I was transferred from the Ausland Group to the Berlin Local Group, of which I continued to be a member.

I always had a desire to return home to see my family. In October, 1940, I learned of the opportunity to return to Germany by way of Japan,

through the instigation of the German Consul in New York City. At this time, I went to the German Consulate and filled out an application with Mr. Geier, a clerk at the German Consulate, for my return to Germany at the expense of the Consulate.

Around the middle of March, 1941, I was supplied with tickets for my passage to Japan, by the German Consulate, and subsequently left New York City by bus and went to San Francisco, California. I was in San Francisco for two days, leaving there on March 27, 1941, aboard the "Tatuta Maru", of the N. Y. K. Line, in company with forty or fifty other Germans.

I wish to state at this time that upon my arrival at Detroit in 1927, I applied for my ~~Certificate of Arrival~~ ^{final}, which was subsequently issued, and then, after the receipt of these papers, I did not take out United States citizenship papers because I could not decide whether I intended to remain in this country or go back to Germany.

Regarding my trip back to Germany at the expense of the German Consulate, I wish to state that no job was offered me, but that I had intended to go to visit my family and to aid Germany in its war efforts, with the possibility of returning to this country at the end of the war.

After boarding the "Tatuta Maru", we were sixteen days in crossing to Yokohama. After arriving in Yokohama, I immediately went to Tokyo, where I remained about sixteen days. From Tokyo I went to Harbin, Manchuria, which took about three days en route. Upon arrival there, I remained three days, at which time, about May 7th, I proceeded en route to Moscow, crossing the Russian border at Manchule, which is on the Siberian Railroad. Upon my arrival at Moscow, which took about a week en route, I was there for several hours and then boarded a train for Germany, entering at Mankilea, which is located along the central part of Old Poland. I proceeded to go by train from Mankilea to Berlin, at which place I arrived about the middle of May, 1941. I remained in Berlin a couple of days. While there, I passed by the Auslands office and told them of my being back in Germany. I then went from Berlin to Dortmund, Germany, to visit my parents. I remained there for almost two months, until the middle of July.

While I was at home, I rested up. I did not have any party activities, and nobody contacted me. In July, 1941, I decided to go to Berlin and look for a job. I thought I had better opportunities in Berlin to find myself a job overthere, and I found a job at the Feilers Feinmechanic as an automatic screw machine set-up man. This concern was engaged in making war materials, the exact nature of which I am not aware. Prior to the war, the Feilers Feinmechanic Company was engaged in making typewriters and adding machines. I worked from 6:00 A. M. to 6:00 P. M.,

five days a week, receiving approximately 110 marks per week for my services. During this period of time, I lived in a rooming house, which was located at 5 Eberswalder Street, Berlin, eating my meals at restaurants.

During this time of employment, in July, 1941, I went to the Auslands office in Berlin and told them that I was now in Berlin, having returned from Dortmund, and was presently residing in that city, and that I wished to be transferred to a local group of the party - NSDAP. After being transferred to the local group, I attended only one meeting, but continued to pay my dues. From this period on, up until April 1, 1942, I continued to work for the Feilers Feinmechanic Company, living anormal working man's life.

However, one night around the middle of March, 1942, I attended a social meeting at the Auslands Group, at which time I met Walter Kappe, whom I had met in Chicago previously, in 1934. He was a member of the Friends of New Germany. Kappe, in 1934, was in Chicago as a representative speaker of the New York City society. During this social meeting in Berlin, I approached Kappe and told him I had seen him in Chicago. We at this time had a few drinks and talked generally about the United States and old times. It was at the same meeting that I met George Dasch, with whom I had crossed the Pacific en route from the United States to Japan on the "Tatuta Maru" in 1941. It was at this time that I made my acquaintance with him and talked with him a while. On this occasion, Dasch and I made arrangements to meet together about a week later at a small bar in West Berlin.

I met Dasch at the bar, as arranged, and, during the evening, he asked me if I would like to go back to the United States. I was, of course, surprised, and couldn't imagine for what purpose. So I asked him questions as to why, and Dasch, on this occasion, would not give me any reason other than that it might be for the good of the Fatherland. However, on this occasion I couldn't give him an answer, so Dasch took my address at 5 Eberswalder Street.

Around the end of March, he wrote to me, while I was thinking the proposition over. His letter requested me to see him at a restaurant on ~~Wittenburg~~ ^{Wittenburg} Place in West Berlin in the afternoon during the latter part of March. On this occasion I met Dasch and Kappe and we had a couple of beers together. Kappe talked about how nice it would be for some of us fellows who knew the United States, to go back and do something for the Fatherland, and I agreed to this. At this time, I asked what this was all about, and Kappe didn't tell me much. He said that I would have to go some place to take a special course, which was to start after Easter.

Around April first, I resigned my job with the Feilers Feinmechanic Company and went home to Dortmund, where I stayed for about a week. After

Easter, on Wednesday, I went to Berlin and reported to a room, at 9:00 A. M., which is located on the fourth or fifth (top) floor at 6 Ranke Street, Berlin, at which time I met Kappe, Reinhold Barth, and a few other men, who later turned out to be my colleagues at the school.

I remained here about an hour, and then all of us were taken to the Berlin Potsdamer ^{Station}, where we took the train to Bradenburg, Germany, arriving there about 2:30 P. M. the same day. We then disembarked, where we took a car to the end of the line, and then we took a bus and rode for about a half-hour to the end of the bus line. We then got off and walked for about five minutes to a large country farm house. This place, which appeared to be an old estate, turned out to be the school, which consisted of a large country house as a dormitory, a rifle range, pistol range, a laboratory, and a gymnasium.

From Wednesday until Saturday of this week, we did nothing in the way of school work and merely used our time in getting acquainted with each other, playing sports, reading American newspapers and magazines, and during this time Kappe told us that there were going to be some fellows here to teach us to make some explosives. This school was operated by Lieutenant Walter Kappe and Special Leader Reinhold Barth. However, I wish to say that to this date I do not know what Department of the German government was responsible for the operation of the school.

On Sunday night of this first week, the instructors, whom I knew to be Dr. Schütze and Koenig, whose first names I do not know, arrived, and we students were introduced to them. The students were, as I remember (phonetic) George Dasch, Richard Quientas, Heink, Swede or Jerry Swenson; Scotty, who was from Hamburg, and later dropped out of school; Ernest Zuber, who later dropped out of school also; Herbert Haupt, Herman Neubauer, Eddie Kerling, Pete Burger, and myself.

Prior to the arrival of the instructors, we students were placed in two groups -- namely, there was one under the charge of Dasch as leader, including Quientas, Heink, Burger, Heink, Swede Swenson, and Scotty; whereas, in Eddie Kerling's group were Haupt, Neubauer, Zuber, and myself.

Starting Monday, around April 13th, the first week of school, we had classes from 9:00 A. M. to 12:00 noon and two hours in the afternoon, receiving instructions on making of explosives, things that burned easily, incendiaries, detonators, timing instruments, and principles of chemistry. During the second week of school, we stayed and experimented with some of the explosives and detonators. During the evenings, while at school, we usually read, talked, drank beer, and generally amused our-

selves in this fashion.

The third week of school we were given practical problems in which we had to go out and blow up objects without being detected, and we also discussed the use of secret writings and their formulas. The secret writing materials were taught to us in about two hours. We were instructed to use phenolphthalein and ammonia as a writing fluid and to develop this we were to use three spoons of cigarette ashes and ^{two} three-spoons of water, or glycerine could be used.

The school was completed around April 29th, when we were to begin a vacation, being instructed to report on May 12th at 6 Ranke Street.

At this time I wish to state that while we were in school we were instructed to make out a story for use in America in case we were asked to identify ourselves. My story was that I was born in Chicago, raised in Switzerland, went to school there, came back to the United States in 1927, where I remained.

On April 29th, I left school and went home and I remained there until May 11th, at which time I returned to Berlin and took up my old residence at 5 Eberswalder Street. On Tuesday, May 12th, I reported to the office, 6 Ranke Street, where I found Lieutenant Kappe and my colleagues present. We all then went to look over the German railroad plant in Berlin, where we discussed the possibility of sabotage of railroad cars, bearings, and so forth.

On Thursday, May 14th, we all went to a small town near Wittenburg in the State of Anhalt, where we looked over an aluminum factory. At this place we discussed the probabilities of disabling transformers in order to harm the aluminum industry.

In the course of the school, we were told that there were three aluminum plants in the East, which section our group was to cover, one being in South Carolina, one in New York, ^{near Buffalo} and the third one I don't remember just where, which we were to attempt to disable.

(Perhaps Virginia)

We remained at this little town, whose name I cannot recall, for the night, and on Friday, May 15th, we went to see another aluminum plant, which was nearby Wittenburg, and looked over the power stations and so forth. After this trip, we returned to Berlin. On Saturday and Sunday of this week we did nothing but what we pleased, I going out with some friends of mine. On Monday, the 18th, we all returned to the office, and sat around and talked about general things.

On either Tuesday, Wednesday, or Thursday, while at the office ^{the latter} on Ranke Street, we were all give Draft Board and Social Security cards, each having our fictitious names thereon, mine being William Thomas.

^{about} At the same time we were issued the Social Security and Draft Registration Cards, Kappe and a man whose name I do not know gave each of us a contract to sign, which contained a pledge that we would do our best for the Fatherland and pledge ourselves to secrecy regarding our work. It also contained a clause for the benefit of the families left in Germany. My clause stated that I would receive 300 marks a month while in Germany, 50 of which were to be sent monthly to my parents in Dortmund, the rest of which was to be placed in my name in a bank in Berlin, the name of which I do not recall at the moment.

On Friday, May 22d, we all left Berlin, bringing with us four boxes of explosive equipment, for Paris, France, and arrived there Saturday, the 23rd. We all stayed in a hotel near the Louvre. We remained here until Monday night, doing nothing but sightseeing.

On Monday, the 25th, we took a train to Lorient, France, arriving there the morning of the 26th. My group, with Kerling as leader, separated at this time from Dasch's group, but both groups went to the same hotel, where we remained for the night. It was my understanding that my group was going to the coast of Florida and that Dasch's group was going somewhere on Long Island coast.

While I was at the hotel, Kappe came to my room and gave me a money belt containing ^{about} \$1500 and \$500 in cash as pocket money. It is my understanding that the rest of the colleagues in this group received similar money belts, with the exception of my leader, Kerling, who received a considerable amount more. Of course, there was not an exact understanding about it, but we always assumed that in case we ran short of money we would receive more from Kerling.

Around 8:00 P. M. on the 26th, we boarded a German submarine, and about an hour later, sailed from Lorient for America. We arrived on June 16th at a point on the Florida coast, somewhere between St. Augustine and Jacksonville, some time late at night. We four were put ashore in a rubber boat, being accompanied by a sailor from the submarine, along with the four boxes of explosives and our personal belongings. On reaching shore, the four of us went inland, not far from the beach, and buried the boxes. The exact spot as to where this material is buried I don't believe I could find again, because of its being a very dark night and I was very excited. Also, I was not told to pay any attention to this ^{box}, leaving this matter up to Kerling.

After burying this material, we all started walking fast up the beach for a couple of hours, and, as it became light, we saw buildings in the distance and later learned that it was Jacksonville Beach. At this time, we lay down for a couple of hours to rest, and then, noticing there being a highway nearby, we went down there and soon stopped a bus having a destination sign on it reading, "Beaches." We boarded the bus and arrived in Jacksonville around noon, at which time we separated into pairs. Herby Haupt and I went to the Hotel Mayflower in Jacksonville. During the afternoon we went out to purchase some clothes and something to eat. The next morning, Herby left Jacksonville on an early train, for, I presume, Chicago. Around 8:30 A. M. I caught a train for Cincinnati, Ohio, where I was to meet Kerling.

At this time I wish to state that during my stay in Jacksonville I did not contact anyone. I don't know of anyone being contacted by the other members of my group.

I arrived in Cincinnati at 8:00 A. M. the following morning, and went directly to the Hotel Metropole. I met Kerling at the Gibson Hotel around noon the next day. We made plans to take the train to New York and agreed to meet at the ^{But, came to the Metropole} Gibson Hotel again around 4:00 P. M. When I met Kerling at the ^{Hotel} hotel, he had Neubauer with him. I don't know where Neubauer went from there, ^{but believe we left} because we didn't talk long, as Kerling and I had to catch the train for New York. I don't know anybody in Cincinnati and didn't contact anybody while there.

Kerling and I arrived in New York at 8:00 A. M. the morning after we left Cincinnati, and went directly to the Hotel Commodore. While in New York, we didn't travel around together other than to have our meals.

Monday morning, June 22, 1942, at about 10:00 o'clock, I went to visit an old friend of mine, Anthony Kramer, of 171 East 33rd Street, New York City, whom I knew in Detroit, Michigan, when we roomed together in 1929 and whom I worked with at Hammond, Indiana, in 1936 and later knew in New York up to the time I returned to Germany in March, 1941. Kramer was not home, so I left a note for him to meet me that night at 9:00 P. M. at the Information Booth in Grand Central Station.

Kramer came to Grand Central Station at 9:00 P. M., and we went to a tavern at the corner of 44th Street and Lexington Avenue. We discussed old times, and Kramer wanted to know how I returned and what I was doing in New York City, but I didn't tell him. I told him that I would tell him later, and put him off. We left each other around midnight and I returned to the Commodore.

Kramer and I met again the next night at about 8:00 o'clock at the same tavern, and we spent the evening together again. I told him, during the course of the evening, that I had a money belt that I wanted him to keep for me for a while because I didn't want to carry it around with me. He agreed to take it, so I took it off in the toilet of the tavern and gave it to him on 44th Street. I don't recall telling Kramer how much money the belt contained. After giving him the money, Kramer and I went to Thompson's Restaurant on 42d Street for coffee and pie and then we left each other again at about 11:30 P. M. We were to meet again a couple of nights later, but I was picked up by Federal officers shortly after leaving him.

At this time, I wish to state that at no time was I instructed by the school or anyone in Germany or during my trip over here by submarine as to the possibility of leaving the United States by German aid. No arrangements were made as to means of signaling for transportation on German submarines or any manner of communication with Germany.

I also wish to state at this time that both groups which were in school together were known as the Pastorik Group.

I also wish to add the following information to this statement. In May, 1937, when I returned to New York City from Fort Myers, Florida, I resided on East 83rd Street, somewhere in the 150's, near Lexington Avenue, correct address or name of the operators of the rooming house, of which there were two, I cannot recall. Around the early part of 1938 I moved to 164 (?) East 85th Street, where I remained until March, 1941, when I then moved to 171 East 83rd Street, living at the same place that a friend resided, Kramer, until leaving New York City for San Francisco and my subsequent departure from this country March 27th.

I have read this statement, consisting of ten pages in addition to this page, and it is true to the best of my knowledge and belief. I have initialed the bottom of each of the preceding pages and am signing this page, of my own free will.

(Signed) _____

Witnesses:

Special Agent, Federal Bureau of Investigation,
U. S. Department of Justice, New York, N.Y.

Special Agent, F.B.I.
U. S. Dept. of Justice
New York, N. Y.

Federal Bureau of Investigation
United States Department of Justice

AHJ:ES
65-11065

New York, New York
June 28, 1942

PERSONAL AND CONFIDENTIAL

MEMORANDUM FOR THE DIRECTOR

Re: GEORGE J. DASCH, with aliases; Et Al
SABOTAGE

The following is a telephone conversation from Special Agent in Charge A. H. Johnson of the Chicago Field Division at 3:10 P.M. today:

HERMANN OTTO NEUBAUER

Based on information received to the effect that one H. NICHOLAS was registered at the Sheridan Plaza Hotel, 4607 North Sheridan Road, Chicago, Illinois, an examination was made of the room of this individual in his absence and through articles of clothing and railroad notations, it was determined that this individual was believed to be identical with subject. A surveillance was set up at the Sheridan Plaza Hotel and at 6:45 P.M., June 27, 1942, Subject NEUBAUER was taken into custody by agents of this office at the time of his return to the hotel. When arrested, he had \$130.88 on his person and a search of his effects in the hotel room revealed \$200. additional in fifty dollar bills hidden among his ties and handkerchiefs. No money belt, however, was located at that time. It was further noted that numerous articles of his clothing bore Jacksonville labels and his luggage was all new, expensive luggage. Upon questioning, he readily admitted his identity to be HERMANN OTTO NEUBAUER and he immediately executed waivers of search, custody and removal.

Upon further questioning, he indicated that he was born February 5, 1910 at Hamburg, Germany; that his education consisted merely of the Public Schools and apprenticeship as a cook. He arrived in the United States at the Port of New York in June or July, 1931 and took employment on the S. S. "Leviathan" as a first-class cook making eight trips to Southampton. He indicated that he filed his first papers for United States citizenship at San Francisco, California in the Fall of 1932 while employed as a cook on the S. S. "Monterey" of the Mattson Lines which was plying between San Francisco and Australia.

Memorandum for the Director

New York, New York
June 28, 1942

He stated that shortly prior thereto, and between Christmas, 1931 and January, 1932, he was employed at the Heublién Hotel, Hartford, Conn., as a cook remaining until April, 1932 when he went to Boston, Massachusetts aboard the S. S. "Monterey" which was making its maiden voyage. He then made a voyage on the "Lerline" of the same company, where he was employed from January, 1933 to April, 1933 leaving the boat at Honolulu to enter the hospital for the purpose of taking treatment for a venereal disease. After a period of three months, he travelled to Chicago, Illinois in July, 1933 and was employed at the Chicago World's Fair by Swife & Company until the closing of the Fair in October, 1934. He was then employed at the Atlantic Hotel, Chicago, Illinois from January to April, 1935 and at the Pamer House, Chicago until April, 1936, the Old Heidelberg Restaurant until August, 1936 and at the Bismark Hotel in Chicago from October, 1936 until March, 1939. It is pointed out here that his employment at all the above places, and at subsequent places was that of a cook.

In April, 1939, he went to New York City where he signed on the S. S. "Brazil" of the Morre-McConnack Line where he remained until the end of May, 1939, making two trips to South America. He then changed to the S. S. "Manhattan" of the United States Lines, and was employed until April, 1939 when the war broke out. The following October, which would be 1939, Subject NEUBAUER, together with EDWARD MERLING, JOSEPH NUSSBAUM, ERNEST METTIN, RICHARD ERNEST HEINZE, a salesman for the Fleischman Yeast Company, purchased the yacht, "Lekalla" from PAUL SCHWARZ (SWARS) of New York City for the sum of about \$1500 to \$1800 dollars. NEUBAUER stated that this purchase was made for the purpose of returning to Germany, and that the above group, together with certain others who had no monetary interest in the act, left Baltimore, Maryland, where the ship was located enroute to the Port of New York City, but were stopped by the United States Coast Guard, and pulled into the Staten Island, United States Coast Guard station, New York; that they requested, and were allowed to go to Miami, Florida, for the express purpose of selling the yacht. However, they were stopped at Wrightsville, North Carolina, and maintained for a period of one week by the United States Coast Guard, but were allowed to continue to Miami, Florida where the boat was sold. He stated that he was not present when this boat was sold but received the sum of \$180.00 as his share of the subsequent sale.

NEUBAUER had advised that shortly after his arrival in Miami, Florida on the yacht, ALMA WOLF, 219 West North Avenue, Chicago, Illinois, came to Miami at his request, and they were married on January 10, 1940. NEUBAUER took employment at the Dempsey-Vanderbilt Hotel in Miami Beach, Florida, for a period of approximately 10 to 12 days, and

Memorandum for the Director

New York, New York
June 28, 1942

then came to New York City with his wife and lived with MAX SCHNABEL, 315 East 86th Street. He was then employed by the SCHLITZ BREWING COMPANY, at the New York World's Fair for approximately 10 days after which he worked at the Boarshead, Lexington Avenue, New York City during June and July, 1940. NEUBAUER then stated that he left New York City in July, 1940 on the S. S. "Exocorda" of the American Export Lines, in the company of JOSEPH NUSSBAUM and EDWARD KERLING going to Lisbon, Portugal from which point a plane was taken to Rome, Italy and from there a train to Hamburg, Germany.

NEUBAUER was questioned in considerable detail regarding his association with any German organizations of any description in the United States, and relative to any service he may have had in the armed forces of the United States, and also as to whether he was contacted by representatives of the German Labor Front or similar German organizations for the purpose of returning to Germany. In this connection, he stated that while he purchased \$1,000 of Rueckwanderer marks while at Chicago, Illinois in 1938, and while he was a member of the German American Bund at Chicago, Illinois from 1935-39, nevertheless he was at no time contacted by persons associated with the German Labor Front or similar German organizations, and as a matter of fact, he paid his own fare on the S. S. "Exocorda" in the sum of \$250.

He stated that prior to leaving New York City for Germany he made no contact with the German Consulate's Office although he was acquainted with the chap named VOGEL of that office. He stated that at no time has he ever been associated with any armed forces of the United States, and emphatically denied ever carrying any messages, books, papers or information of any kind from any part of the United States to any foreign country for the German Consulate's office, the German Embassy or for any of the Ducase subjects some of whom he admitted being acquainted with.

In the latter connection, NEUBAUER stated that while employed by the United States Lines, he became acquainted with HARTWEG KLEISS and PAUL FEHSE, convicted subjects in the Ducase, and he had known FRANZ STIGLER in Hamburg, Germany having been employed with him at the Lloyd Restaurant.

NEUBAUER advised that two months after his arrival in Germany, in November, 1940, he was drafted as a private in the infantry of the German Army. Shortly after his induction, he was given a furlough. He went from Germany to Lisbon, Portugal for the purpose of meeting his wife who had come to that point from the United States in April, 1941. He received military training, until May, 1941 at Magdeburg, Germany and was then moved to the Russian front in Poland and within a period of

Memorandum for the Director

New York, New York
June 28, 1942

two weeks, was wounded in the leg, right cheek and forehead by shrapnel. He was returned to the Stuttgart Military Hospital where he was hospitalized until November, 1941. He was then given six weeks furlough due to disability and on January 8, 1942 he reported back to the Army Medical Center near Vienna remaining under medical observation until the end of March, 1942. According to NEUBAUER, he was then instructed to report to his regiment at Magdeburg, and within a period of approximately one week he was contacted by an officer of the German Army who inquired as to his knowledge of the United States. Several days later, he was ordered to report to a training school at Brandeburg, Germany in civilian clothes and he pointed out that during his discussion with the German Army officer, he was not asked or questioned as to his willingness to enter this school for the purpose of coming to the United States.

NEUBAUER stated that he reported to the aforementioned school in the early part of April, 1942, and that he then learned that EDWARD KERLING was also a member of this school. Further, that at the school he associated almost entirely with KERLING, HERBERT HAUPT and BILL THOMAS, alias THIEL, whom he never met before but who were assigned together as a group to receive instruction and training; that the term of school lasted for a period of about sixteen days. The hours of attendance varied, but were usually from 9 AM to 2 PM or from 9 AM to 4 PM, and further that the members enjoyed recreational periods. He stated that most of the discussions and lectures were in English which was primarily for the purpose of familiarizing themselves with the English language and customs; that they were instructed in English and learned American songs; that the curriculum dealt mainly with the use of explosives and the chemical makeup of explosives, and the manner of setting them off. He stated that they had no actual experience in setting off the explosives, but would experiment in the mixing of the chemicals into the explosives; that they lived in quarters similar to a dormitory and that at irregular periods of the day his group of four were joined by another group of four and probably one or two other students.

In this connection, it is pointed out that NEUBAUER has identified photographs of BURGER, HEIMRICH, HARM HEINCK and RICHARD QUIRIN, but states that he has never known their names.

NEUBAUER stated that upon the completion of the school, a man in civilian clothes, whose identity he did not know, spoke before the class, in German, advising the group that they were being sent to the United States and instructed them that they were to obtain employment of any kind as a cover, and to commit acts of sabotage that were possible. At this time, this man informed the group that EDWARD KERLING was to be their leader, and that they were to report to and receive instructions from him.

Memorandum for the Director

New York, New York
June 28, 1942

Further, that immediately thereafter he was given a ten-day furlough which he spent in Berlin with his wife. He then reported back to the school. The group left Brandeburg, Germany by train and arrived in Paris, France where they remained in a hotel overnight, name not recalled, and at which point they were contacted by a man in civilian clothes, who stated that they were to leave for the Coast of France and were to depart for the United States on a submarine. This man accompanied them on an overnight trip on the train to the Coast of France where they were turned over to a captain of a submarine. NEUBAUER stated that while enroute to the Coast, money belts containing \$4,000. were given to each member by this man and in addition he received \$600. in five, ten and twenty dollar denominations.

He went on to state that the submarine immediately departed and after about three weeks landed at Atlantic Beach, Florida, early Wednesday morning, June 17, 1942; that after burying several boxes of explosives which were brought over on the submarine, the group went into Jacksonville, Florida, and arrived around noon. At this time, the group separated, HAUPT and THOMAS going off together and according to NEUBAUER, their definite destination was not known to him. NEUBAUER and KERLING checked in at the Seminole Hotel where they remained for two nights. He stated that he arranged to meet HAUPT in Chicago. NEUBAUER claims that he and KERLING remained in the Seminole Hotel while in Jacksonville. At Jacksonville, NEUBAUER states that he and KERLING, purchased clothing and baggage and after two nights, left Friday morning, June 19, 1942, at 8:30 AM on the train arriving in Cincinnati, Ohio at 3 AM on June 20, 1942. While in Cincinnati, NEUBAUER stated that he took in a show and KERLING went to the Gibson Hotel for the purpose of looking over the hotel as it was to be the place of a subsequent meeting, and of several meetings of the group.

At 11 PM on the same evening, June 20, 1942, NEUBAUER stated he took the Illinois-Central train arriving in Chicago, Illinois on Sunday, June 21, 1942 at 7 AM. He immediately registered at the LaSalle Hotel. At 1 PM the same date, he met HERBERT HAUPT at the Chicago Theatre and they formulated no plans on that evening. On this occasion they merely discussed the manner in which each had arrived in Chicago and arranged to meet the following Wednesday at the same spot at 2 PM. The second meeting subsequently took place. The subsequent meeting took place there and they saw a show at the Chicago Theatre. After the show, they arranged to meet the following Sunday night in front of the Uptown Theatre on Broadway Avenue, Uptown, Chicago.

In connection with the money belt given to NEUBAUER, he originally stated emphatically that he threw the belt containing the money out of the back door of the train while enroute from Jacksonville to Cincinnati. However, after further considerable questioning, he admitted that on either Monday or Tuesday evening, June 22 or June 23, 1942 he proceeded to the home of HARRY JAQUES, and his wife, EMMA at

Memorandum for the Director

New York, New York
June 28, 1942

221 West North Avenue, Chicago, Illinois and informed them that he had just arrived in the United States from Germany; that he had in his possession the sum of \$3700. or \$3800. which he desired that they keep for him until such time as he might desire it. NEUBAUER states that JAKUES agreed to keep the money for him and he turned over to him an envelope bearing the letterhead of the LaSalle Hotel in Chicago, Illinois which contained the above sum and told him that he might contact JAKUES at irregular intervals for the purpose of obtaining money for expenses. NEUBAUER insists that this was the first time that he had ever met JAKUES and his wife EMMA, although he admits that he was informed by Emma that she had seen him on one occasion at his, NEUBAUER's wife's home, which is located across the street, at 219 West North Avenue. However, he does not recall ever meeting EMMA JAKUES.

He stated that while they undoubtedly got the impression that he received the money from Germany, he did not give any explanation and in fact JAKUES stated that he was not interested in the manner or reason why he had the money.

NEUBAUER stated that on Wednesday evening, which is June 24, 1942, he left the LaSalle Hotel, Room 1812, and checked in at the Sherman Hotel, Room 683. He was not sure of the exact number of this last -mentioned room. On Friday, June 26, 1942, he registered at the Sheridan Plaza Hotel and was assigned Room 1230. During his stay in Chicago, NEUBAUER states that the only persons contacted by him were HARRY JAKUES and HERBERT HAUPT.

Agents of this office were dispatched to the home of Mr. and Mrs. HARRY JAKUES, 221 West North Avenue. Mr. JAKUES was not at home, but his wife executed a waiver of search and the envelope above mentioned was found and there was contained therein \$3600. all in fifty dollar bills. At the present time the agents are proceeding to the point where HARRY JAKUES can be located and he will be brought into the office for questioning concerning the possession of this money. His wife, EMMA, is also being brought to the office for questioning.

Respectfully submitted,

A. H. JOHNSON
Special Agent in Charge

Haupt, dated July 3rd, 1943. That Haupt read it, made corrections, initialed each page and signed the statement.

(Summary of second statement of Haupt, as to matters which are in addition to or are in conflict with the first statement.)

(P.1658).

Having been shown photographs of four men, identified Walter Cappe. I talked with William Wernecke about registering. He advised me how to fake a bad physical condition. I went to see a doctor and got some medicine. (P.1661). I obtained some nitroglycerin pills, and had a cardiograph taken to show physical defects.

1663 (P.1663). Of the money I brought to America, I gave \$10.00 to Gerta Struckmann, \$50.00 to the Wergins who knew I had brought the money from Germany on the submarine, and that I was to act as a German agent. I gave the money belt to Mrs. Froehling, who returned it to me later. (P.1666). I subsequently threw the money belt in the trash, removing the money, and placed it in a brown envelope, and hid it under the rug in my parents' bedroom. (P.1668). The Froehlings also knew I was up to no good. I told my father that my job over here was to handle production.

DIRECT EXAMINATION CONTINUED.

That Haupt identified exhibit F-219 as a coat which he had taken with him to Germany and brought back to America. That P-230 is the maroon bathing trunks that Haupt had taken from the United States to Germany, and then wore when he left the submarine.

(P.1673). That witness had found a zipper bag in the home of the Froehlings, which he turned over to J. A. Lynch. (P.1673). That Haupt said that he and Kerling also buried four German military caps that they had brought over from Germany near the explosives.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY COLONEL ROYALL.

1674 (P.1674). That Haupt is the youngest of the eight prisoners. That Haupt's reason for leaving Chicago originally was trouble with a girl, and he was scheduled to register for the draft on July 1st. He left on June 16th. That when he left he intended to go to Mexico and Nicaragua. (P.1675). That Haupt's parents did not know until he returned that he had been to Germany.

1678 (P.1677). That Haupt's citizenship was not quite established, due to the fact that he believed he was an American citizen because of derivation from his father, who was a naturalized citizen, and that he had never made any affirmative act or sworn allegiance to this country, and that it was therefore possible that he was a German citizen and there was some question in the minds of the German officials as to whether he was a German citizen. (P.1678). That Burger had said that Haupt was personally interested in the monetary angle of the matter, and that he would do anything for money, and that his first undertaking on arriving here was to go to an optical company, where he had worked, and explore the possibilities of sabotaging that place.

1678 (P.1679). That Wergin would get in trouble if Haupt reported the matter upon his arrival here. Froehling's name was brought up by Cappe, who knew his address and name. That Haupt used his own name when he landed in Jacksonville.

(P. 1679). That it was proposed to use the name of Larry Jordan, but he thought he could arrange to use his own name and in that way tell his own story of having returned from Mexico and not excite suspicion. (P. 1680). That he was given his selective service registration card in the name of Jordan, but was given a social security card under his correct name. That Haupt said he had registered under his own name in Jacksonville.

(P. 1681). That Haupt said that he intended to expose the plans. That when asked how he thought he came to be arrested, he said he thought that Burger had possibly turned the others in. That he knew of Burger's experience in the concentration camp, and he gathered that Burger wasn't entirely in accord with the mission.

(P. 1682). That Haupt said it was his intention to turn the group in on the 4th of July at Cincinnati and that he knew he was being followed before he was arrested, he being afraid that the money he had on him had become known, and that he might be held up.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION.

1683 (P. 1683). That Haupt was instructed to go to Froehling and make arrangements to use him as a mail drop. That he said he was going to turn the group in on June 27th. That he was arrested at 9 in the morning and made this statement between 4:30 and 5:30. That the statement was volunteered and that he had not discussed the exposure with any other member.

(P. 1684). Haupt thought he was being followed the night before he was arrested. (P. 1685). Haupt said he had previously arranged with Kerling to obtain an automobile, to meet in Chicago, and from there go to Florida to dig up the explosives. That a girl who they were to take with them was going to take the explosives in her baggage on a train to New York. That they were to go to Florida shortly after July 6th. That after taking the explosives to New York, we were to carry out our program of sabotage. That Neubauer knew of the meeting on July 6th at the Knickerbocker Hotel. (P. 1686). That Thiel was to come to the meeting on July 4th and also the one on July 6th. (P. 1687). That Haupt did not say that he was assigned a German Army number, although he understood his status was similar to that of a soldier.

RECROSS EXAMINATION BY COLONEL ROYALL.

(P. 1687). That the incident of the use of the automobile was omitted from the statement through inadvertence.

TESTIMONY OF JOHN A. LYNCH, SPECIAL AGENT OF THE F.B.I., CHICAGO OFFICE, A WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P. 1691). That Exhibit P-221 is a bag turned over to witness by Rice which contained \$9,950.00 in fifty-dollar bills in a false bottom.

TESTIMONY OF MILLARD E. SHAWFER, SPECIAL AGENT OF THE F.B.I., CHICAGO OFFICE, A WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P. 1693). That on June 27, 1942, witness went to the home of Mr. and Mrs. Hans Haupt, 2234 North Fremont Avenue, Chicago, Illinois, searched the house and found \$2,550.00 in fifty-dollar bills, a blank certificate of registration for the Selective Service, a brown envelope

under the rug in the bedroom of Mrs. Haupt. That Mr. and Mrs. Haupt executed a waiver of search, and witness looked around and found the envelope.

TESTIMONY OF FRANK F. MEECH, SPECIAL AGENT OF THE F.B.I.,
CHICAGO OFFICE, A WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P.1697). That on July 2nd, 1942, witness went to the house of Carl Eggert at 3438 North Seeley Street, Chicago, and searched the house and found \$900.00 in fifty-dollar bills, located in a cabinet in the dining room.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY COLONEL ROYALL.

(P.1698). The money was found in one place.

TESTIMONY OF CHARLES H. STANLEY, WITNESS FOR THE
PROSECUTION RECALLED.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P.1700). Witness showed P-24, the duffel bag, P-22, the Marine cap, P-39, pants, P-32, coat, to Haupt, who said they were similar to articles issued to him in his group in Germany and worn to America and were left on the submarine when they landed in Florida.

TESTIMONY OF L. O. PRIOR, SPECIAL AGENT OF THE F.B.I., OF
MIAMI, FLORIDA, A WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P.1702). That witness went approximately four miles south of Jacksonville, Florida and dug in the same on June 25th, and uncovered Exhibits P-222 and P-223, shovels, approximately 30 feet north of the point where the explosives were found. Witness identified P-224, P-225, P-226 and P-227 as four German marine caps found in the same hole as the shovels. (P.1703).

TESTIMONY OF THOMAS J. DONEGAN, SPECIAL AGENT OF THE F.B.I.,
A WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION, RECALLED.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P.1704). That witness never struck Kerling.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY COLONEL ROYALL.

(P.1705). That an agent came into his office and told him that Kerling stated that somebody brushed his face. That witness told agent to have Kerling brought in, and witness told Kerling that was a lie and asked him what it was based on. That Kerling never talked with Kerling alone at any time. That witness is the same person who talked with Dasch about Presidential clemency.

TESTIMONY OF W. WILLIS FISHER, A WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION,
RECALLED.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P.1706). Witness identified Neubauer and stated that he was taken into custody on June 27, 1942 at 7:45 p.m. in the Sheridan Plaza Hotel, Chicago, Illinois, by witness, and Agents Dixon and Nirsh.

That he was immediately taken to the P.B.I. office at Chicago, and searched. That a wallet containing \$331.88 was found upon him, made up in part of four \$50.00 bills. That P-228. That P-229, P-230, and P-231 are waivers signed in witness's presence by Neubauer.

(P.1712). That the wallet contained a selective service registration card, dated October 15, 1940, and a social security card identified as P-232 and P-233. (P.1713). That the registration certificate has Henry Nicholas on it. That Neubauer stated he signed this particular registration certificate in that name, that it was filled out by Dasch, was given to him in Kappe's office in Berlin.

(P.1713). That the Social Security card was also fraudulent and given to him in Lieutenant Kappe's office in Berlin, and brought over to be used in connection with sabotage activities. That P-234 is a brown zipper bag found in the room of Neubauer at the time of his arrest; that a slicker, bathing trunks, and towel, pair of shoes, were identified by witness as having been brought from the submarine.

TESTIMONY OF ELMER F. EHRICH, SPECIAL AGENT OF THE F.B.I. OF THE
NEW YORK OFFICE, A WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P.1717). That witness was present when Neubauer was apprehended, as were Agents Fisher and Hirsh. That a statement was taken by first questioning, and thereafter dictation to a stenographer in Neubauer's presence. Neubauer read over and initialed each page and signed the last page. The first statement taken June 28th, was taken in the Chicago office, on Saturday night, and Sunday. That P-235 is that statement and was read by Neubauer before signing, he having made a correction therein.

(Summary of statement of Neubauer).

(P.1720). I was born February 5, 1910 at Hamburg, Germany, where I attended public schools and served apprenticeship as a cook. That while employed on the SS Hamburg, I made trips to the port of New York and in June or July of 1931, I jumped ship in New York, and took employment on the S. S. Leviathan and made several trips between Southampton. Around Christmas of 1931, I was laid off, and later obtained work. (P.1721). In 1933, I filed my first papers for United States citizenship, and made several voyages from San Francisco to Australia on the SS Nomad, and made several other trips from America to Hawaii and South America.

(P.1722). In October, 1939, with Edward Kerling, Joseph Huesbaum, Ernest Metting and Richard Ernest Heinze, I purchased a yacht to return to Germany. We were unable to do so and I left it in Miami. I was married in Miami on January 10, 1940, to Alma Wolf, 219 West North Avenue, Chicago, Illinois. In April, 1940, we left Miami and went to New York City. In July, 1940, we went to Lisbon, thence to Rome and to Hamburg. I stayed with my parents. In November, 1940, I was drafted as a private in the Germany Army, where I stayed until May, 1941. During April, 1941, my wife came to Germany. (P.1725). In March, 1942, I was contacted by an officer of the Germany Army who asked me about my knowledge of the United States. Several days later I was given a ticket to go to a school near Brandenburg, in civilian clothing. I received no information as to the type of school that was being run there, or the purpose of the training.

(P.1726). I reported to the school in the middle of April and

learned that Kerling was a member of the school. He and I were grouped with Haupt and Thiel and received instruction together. We were instructed in explosives and acts of sabotage, although we were instructed never to wreck passenger trains and to never kill anyone.

(P.1727). I recognized Burger, Heink, Quirin ~~and Papp~~ as members of the second group.

(P.1727). After school we went to Berlin, thence to Paris, to the coast of France. While on the train from Paris, each was given a money belt. They told us it contained \$4000.00, but was \$300.00 short. We were also given \$400.00 in bills of small denominations.

(P.1728). The submarine left and we landed at Atlantic Beach three weeks later; On June 17, 1942; and were rowed ashore in a rubber boat by one of the crew. All of us being dressed in bathing suits only and wearing German caps with the Nazi swastika emblem in front, and carrying our civilian clothes in a bundle under our arms. We also brought ashore four wooden boxes containing explosives, which we buried in the sand. The caps were taken by Kerling and disposed of by him. The clothes that I brought with me on the submarine were clothes I had purchased in Chicago, taken to Germany, and brought back.

(P.1729). We went into Jacksonville where Haupt and Thieling left us. I arranged to meet Haupt in Chicago on June 21st. On June 19th, we left Jacksonville and went by train to Cincinnati, arriving there on June 20th. Kerling and I parted company there and arranged to meet again on July 6th at the Knickerbocker hotel in Chicago. I left Cincinnati on June 20th, arriving in Chicago the next day, and went to the LaSalle Hotel. That day I met Haupt and made arrangements to meet on June 28th.

1730 (P.1730). On June 22nd or 23rd, I visited Harry Jaques and his wife, Emma, at 221 West North Avenue, Chicago, Illinois, and informed them I had just arrived from Germany; that I had in my possession \$3600.00 and wanted them to keep it for me. Jaques agreed to keep the money, and I turned it over to him. That although they got the impression I got the money from Germany, I did not so tell them, as they said they were not interested in knowing the facts. n

(P.1731). I again visited the Jaques on June 26th.

(P.1732). Since my arrival in the United States, I have contacted only two persons other than the men who came over with me, and they are Harry and Emma Jaques.

1732 (P.1733). During the time I was previously in Chicago, I was a member of the German-American Bund in 1935 and 1936, when I was forced to resign due to the fact that I was not a citizen. I thereupon became a member of the Deutsch Volksbund in Chicago, and remained in this organization until 1939, when I left. I admit that I came to the United States with this group for the purpose of committing acts of sabotage, and might have done so if the opportunity arose, but in discussing the matter with Herbert Haupt while in Chicago, both of us talked about and felt we would not have a chance to commit any sabotage. n

DIRECT EXAMINATION CONTINUED.

(P.2238). Witness identified P-235 as the second statement of Neubauer dated June 30, 1942, taken partially on June 29th and partially on June 30th, and signed on June 30th, on each page and at the end.

in the presence of witness, making corrections before he signed it, and initialing corrections.

(Summary of second statement of Neubauer as to matters not included in, or in conflict with his first statement).

(P.1735). During March, 1942, I received a letter from Gappe, asking if I would go on an assignment to a country where I had been for some time. I accepted this assignment. (P.1736). At the apartment in Berlin, I met men identified by photographs to be Pete, Dick, Heinrich and George, being Burger, Quirin, Heinck and Dasch. A man named Scotty was also present. W

(P.1737). We were taught how to mix and use secret writing. (P.1739). Beginning on May 12, 1942, we spent three days in visiting industrial plants, learning how to sabotage them.

(P.1741). On returning to Berlin, I signed two papers, one being an agreement to pay me 300 marks per month for the period I was away from Germany on this assignment. It was also agreed that the government would pay my wife 335 marks per month, which she was receiving at the present time due to my being a member of the army. If I do not return to Germany, my wife will receive 170 marks per month until her death or remarriage. The other paper was in the nature of a pledge of secrecy. (P.1742). We were required to take no other pledge to the German Government. (P.1743). When I left New York in July, 1940, I was given \$50.00 by the German Consulate in New York, and traveled on a German passport. I did not have a re-entry permit as I had no intention at that time to return to the United States. My fare from Portugal to Rome was paid by the German Government, upon my agreement to repay. My fare was paid for the same way from Rome to Germany. (P.1743). I became a member of the Nazi party at Chicago during 1937. W
1742
1743

DIRECT EXAMINATION CONTINUED.

(P.1743). That Exhibit P-237 was a third statement of Neubauer signed by him under the same circumstances as the other two statements.

(Summary of third statement of Neubauer, as to matters not included in or in conflict or contradictory to the first two statements.)

(P.1747). Jacques definitely had the impression that I was engaged or to be engaged in sabotage work. I showed him my false registration card and told him I was going under the name of Henry Nicholas and was living at the LaSalle Hotel. I told them that Maria Kerling's husband, Edward Kerling, had come over with me, and that I would see him soon. I did not tell them where he was. (P.1748). I told them that I had received a money belt from the German government which was supposed to contain \$4000.00 and gave them the money belt and money. W
1747

DIRECT EXAMINATION RESUMED.

(P.1750). That Neubauer stated that he got his uniform just before he got on the submarine.

(P.1750). That Neubauer discussed plans with Haupt on June 21st. That witness went to the Jacques' house at 221 West North Avenue, talked to Mrs. Jacques, who first denied that she had the money, and finally said that she did. That he found \$3,600 in an envelope hidden in a five gallon coffee can in the pantry off the kitchen. That Mrs. Jacques

pulled it out of the can. That Mr. Jaques was not present. That the money was 73 \$50 bills.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY COLONEL ROYALL.

That the statements were taken in the presence of W. W. Fisher and in part in the presence of Earl Hirsh.

(P.1751). That when witness first saw Neubauer, he saw that he had sustained wounds, and that he was extremely nervous; and that he has a wound alongside his right ear and one on his leg, which are proclaimed by Neubauer to have been suffered by him in the Russian campaign. That he had been confined to a military hospital.

(P.1753). That when Neubauer went to the school, he did not know what type of work he was to do. He later found that it was to be sabotage in America. That Neubauer said he was instructed not to endanger human life; that during the course at school, Neubauer said he suffered from nervousness and did so on his trip, and after his arrival here.

TESTIMONY OF CHARLES E. STANLEY, A WITNESS
FOR THE PROSECUTION RECALLED.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P.1755). Witness identified Neubauer and testified that he had shown him cap marked Exhibit P-22 and duffel bag, P-24, and P-32, pants, and P-39, coat, and that these articles had been identified by Neubauer as being similar to those brought by his group from Germany to America in the submarine, which were left on the submarine at the time they landed in Florida on June 17th.

TESTIMONY OF H. G. FOSTER, A WITNESS FOR
THE PROSECUTION, RECALLED.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P. 1758). That witness apprehended Werner Thiel in company with T. J. Donegan and Spencer J. Drayton, Agent Harich, Agents Lannan, Fisher and Rice, on the night of June 23rd, 1942, between 11:30 and 11:50 p.m., just a few feet west of the entrance to the Commodore Hotel, on 42nd Street, New York City. That he was taken to the office of the F.B.I. in New York, and executed waivers. (P.1760). That P-241 is a wallet taken from Werner Thiel containing a social security card and which was identified as P-243, registration certificate identified as P-242.

1761 (P.1761). That Thiel stated that he wrote "William Thomas" on the registration card. That there was \$554.96 in his clothes, a part of which was in the wallet, being one fifty, some twenties, some tens and some ones. (P.1763). That exhibit P-244 was a room receipt at the Commodore Hotel, found in Thiel's wallet, and signed "William Thomas".

TESTIMONY OF JOHN J. GLEASON, JR., SPECIAL
AGENT OF THE F.B.I., NEW YORK CITY,
A WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION.

DIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P.1765). That P-245 is a signed statement of Thiel taken by witness and Agent McKinney on June 25, 1942. Witness identified Thiel. That Thiel was questioned from 9 o'clock in the morning until noon on June 24th, and from 5:30 o'clock until 9 o'clock, and then the following

morning until 12:30 from 10, and at 2:30 we started taking the statement and concluded at 3:30. That Thiel signed each page of the statement, and the end thereof, having read it and made corrections, and initialed the same.

PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION BY COLONEL
ROYALL.

(P. 1767). That witness was not present at the apprehension of Thiel. He began questioning him at 9 a.m. on June 24th. That witness did not know who had him in custody from midnight on, and never saw Donegan with him. That agents Drayton, Rice and Stanley delivered Thiel to him and that Thiel said that the treatment afforded him was satisfactory except for the gentlemen with a gray streak in the front of his hair who questioned him, swore at him and scolded him. That he did not say that Mr. Donegan struck him, and told the doctor in his presence that he had not been struck.

PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION BY COLONEL
ROYALL OF AGENT RICE.

(P. 1769). That witness was present when Thiel was apprehended as were Donegan, Drayton, Foster, Fisher and Lannan. That Thiel was apprehended at about 11:30. That starting about 1:30 in the morning witness was with Thiel until shortly after 9 in the morning. That during that time, Thiel did not complain of any treatment given him by Donegan. That the doctor asked Thiel if he had any complaints, and Thiel said "No". (P. 1772). That after Thiel was arrested, witness next saw him in a car with Donegan. (P. 1773). That from 1:30 until 9 o'clock, Thiel did not sleep at all. That during that period, witness was talking to him. There were three agents talking to Thiel.

(Summary of statement of defendant Thiel dated June 25th, 1942).

(P. 1774). I was born on March 29th, 1909 at Essen, Germany, educated in the public schools at Dortmund, Germany for eight years. (P. 1775). I then commenced an apprenticeship as a machinist which was completed in April, 1925. During this period, I attended the Gewerber (commercial) school at Dortmund in the year 1922, and in 1923 to 1925 completed the equivalent of a high school education at Westphalen High School.

(P. 1776). From the fall of 1925 to April, 1927, I was unable to find work and remained at home and was supported by my parents.

(P. 1776). I arrived in the United States in April, 1927, in New York, traveling on the SS Cleveland of the Hamburg-American Line. I thereupon went to Detroit and worked for the Ford Motor Company until 1929. I worked for several different companies, but in the fall, November, 1929, I was laid off, and remained unemployed until April, 1930, from which date I worked at odd jobs until October, 1930, when I went to New York. (P. 1777). In June, 1934, I went to Hammond, Indiana and obtained work, and then returned to Jersey City in June, 1935.

(P. 1778). In the spring of 1936, I went to Los Angeles and returned to Hammond, Indiana in May of that year.

(P. 1779). In December, 1936, I went to Fort Myers, Florida and in May, 1937, I returned to New York. I went to Philadelphia and returned to New York in that same year. In January, 1938, I went to work for the Hatisch Gear Works, Brooklyn, New York and worked there until March, 1941, when I returned to Germany by way of San Francisco, Tokyo, and Moscow at the expense of the German Consul in New York.

(1780). I am a member of the Nazi Socialist Party in Germany. Before 1927, I was not affiliated with this party, but in 1933 while in New York, I became interested in the rise of national socialism in Germany. I joined the "Friends of New Germany" in October, 1933, and attended a few weekly meetings, but did not have a uniform. (P.1780). When I went to Hammond, Indiana, in 1934, I and others formed a local group of this society and I became assistant leader. In 1935 I left the Bund, after having had an argument, but shortly thereafter I again became a member.

(1781). I have had no connection with the Bund since 1936, as I did not think it right that I, as a German citizen, should mix in American politics, although I attended one rally in Madison Square Garden in 1938.

(P.1781). In 1938, while in New York, I applied for party membership in a Nazi party through the German Consul's office in New York City, and early the next year became a member, paying monthly dues, and was listed as a member of the Ausland Group. We did not have a local group or activity in New York. Upon my return to Germany in 1941, I was transferred from the Ausland Group to the Berlin local group, of which I continued to be a member. (P.1781). I always had a desire to return home to see my family, and in October, 1940, having learned that the German Consulate would pay my way, I filed an application for tickets. In March, 1941, I was supplied with tickets, and left San Francisco on March 27, 1941 aboard the "Tatuta Maru". Upon my arrival in Detroit in 1937, I applied for my declaration of intention, which was subsequently issued, but did not complete my naturalization proceedings because I could not decide whether I intended to remain in this country or go back to Germany. When I went to Germany in 1941, I intended to go to visit my family and to aid Germany in its war effort, with a possibility of returning to this country at the end of the war.

(P.1782). On the trip over, I went by way of Tokyo, Harbin, Manchuria, Manchule, Moscow, Mankilica, thence to Berlin, arriving there around the middle of May, 1941. I then went to Dortmund to visit my parents and remained there until the middle of July.

(P.1783). I returned to Berlin and went to work in July, 1941, and was transferred to a local group of the party. After this, I attended only one meeting, but continued to pay my dues.

(P.1784). In the middle of March, 1942, I attended a social meeting of the Ausland Group and met Walter Kappe whom I had met in Chicago in 1934. At that time, Kappe was in Chicago as a representative speaker of the New York City society of the Friends of New Germany. I approached Kappe and talked to him about the United States and old times. I also met Dasch at this meeting, and renewed my acquaintance with him, having met him on the Tatus Maru in 1941. Dasch and I made arrangements to meet a week later. (P.1785). I met Dasch as arranged, and he asked if I would like to go back to the United States. I asked him why, and he would give no other reason other than it might be for the good of the Fatherland. Around the end of March, I received a letter from him, requested me to see him at 6 Ranke Street. I went there and met Dasch and Kappe, and talked about how nice it would be for those who knew the United States to go back and do something for the Fatherland and I agreed to this. I asked what this was all about, but Kappe didn't tell me, other than I would have to go some place and take a special course.

(P.1785). On Wednesday after Easter, I went to Berlin and reported at 6 Ranke Street where I met Kappe, Barth and a few others, who later turned out to be my colleagues at school. From there, we went to the farm. (P.1786). For the first part of the school, we met or became

acquainted and engaged in social activities. The students were George Dasch, Quintas, Heinck, Swenson, Scotty, Zuber, Haupt, Neubauer, Kerling, Burger and myself. We were placed in two groups, one under Dasch, including Quintas, Heinck, Burger, Swenson and Scotty, the other under Kerling, being Haupt, Neubauer, Zuber and myself.

(P.1787). We received instructions in making explosives, incendiaries, detonators, etc., and were given practical problems in what to do. We also discussed the use of secret writings and their formulas.

(P.1788). The school ended around April 29th. During the time of the school, we were instructed to make out a story for use in America in case we were asked to identify ourselves. My story was that I was born in Chicago, raised in Switzerland, went to school there, came back to the United States in 1927, where I remained. After school (P.1788), we reported to Berlin on May 12th, and visited railroad plants and other industrial plants.

(P.1790). While in Berlin, we were all given draft board and social security cards, having our fictitious names thereon, mine being William Thomas. We also signed a contract containing a pledge that we would do our best for the fatherland. Mine also contained a clause that I would receive 300 marks a month while in Germany, 50 of which were to be sent to my parents, and the rest to be placed to my name in a Berlin bank. (P.1790). We left Berlin on May 22nd, taking with us four boxes of explosives, arrived in Paris on May 23rd. On May 25th we went to Lorient where the two groups separated. It was my understanding that my group was going to the coast of Florida, and Dasch's group was going somewhere on Long Island.

(P.1791). While I was at the hotel, Kappe gave me a money belt containing \$4600.00, and \$500.00 cash in pocket money. He gave each of the others similar money belts, except Kerling, who received a considerable amount more.

(P.1791). We boarded a submarine on May 26, and arrived at a point on the Florida coast between St. Augustine and Jacksonville on June 16th. We were put ashore in a rubber boat, accompanied by a sailor from the submarine, along with the four boxes of explosives and our personal belongings. On reaching shore, we went inland, buried the boxes. I left the matter of identifying the spot to Kerling. After burying the material, we went up the beach and discovered we were at Jacksonville Beach, and went on in to Jacksonville. There Haupt and I went to the Mayflower Hotel and the next morning Haupt left for Chicago, and I caught a train for Cincinnati where I was to meet Kerling.

1794 (P.1792). While in Jacksonville, I did not contact anyone, and knew of no one being contacted by the other members of the group. I arrived in Cincinnati on the following morning and met Kerling around noon the next day. He agreed to go to New York, and meet, which we did; at that time, Neubauer was with Kerling. Kerling and I arrived in New York at 8 o'clock, a.m. the day after leaving Cincinnati. We registered at the Hotel Commodore. On June 22nd, I visited Anthony Cramer, of 171 East 85th Street, New York City, but did not see him. I left a note, however, and we met later that night, but did not tell him where I had been. I met Cramer again the next night and gave him my money belt. We were to meet again a few nights later, but I was picked up in the interim. 7

(P.1794). During the school, instructions were not given for returning to Germany nor as to means of communication with Germany

or German submarines. Both groups were known as the Pastorius Group.

DIRECT EXAMINATION RESUMED.

(P.1795). Witness identified Exhibit P-345 as a second statement of Thiel's, dated July 3, 1942, signed by Thiel and taken under the same circumstances as the first.

(Summary of second statement of Thiel, as to matters not included in or in conflict with first statement).

(P.1797). At no time did Kappe or Barth tell us to sabotage any particular war plants with the exception of three aluminum factories in the East. We were also to cripple the Newark railroad yards, the Hell Gate Bridge, New York City. We were not given instructions to damage other types of war industries.

(P.1797). On June 22nd, Kerling and I went to Astoria to see Helmut Leiner, whom I had previously known in Yorkville in 1940. He was also a party member. Leiner and Kerling talked about Mrs. Kerling.

(P.1800). We landed in Florida and I gave an army cap I was wearing to Haupt. We later buried this cap with a shovel.

(P.1800). In addition to those already mentioned, at the school, there were Dr. Mueller, Auschenberg, and Marchefsky and a fourth person whose name was unknown.

(P.1802). We were taught secret writing, for the purpose of writing between us members after arriving in the United States. I was never instructed to communicate in any way with Germany. I do recall that there might be an address to write to in Portugal.

(P.1802). Upon arrival in the United States, I was instructed to keep in touch with Kerling, although I do not know Reverend Krepper and was never instructed to get in touch with him, I have heard Kerling refer to an acquaintance as "Reverend" somewhere in New Jersey.

DIRECT EXAMINATION RESUMED.

(P.1804). That Thiel had identified P-247 as a photograph of boxes brought over on a submarine by himself, Kerling, Haupt and Neubauer on June 17th. That Exhibit P-248 to P-255 are photographs of the explosives, detonators, etc., in the four boxes, which were identified by Thiel as being similar to items brought over by him and shown to him in Germany. That P-254 is a cap similar to the one which Thiel wore from the submarine to the South Beach shore of Jacksonville, Florida, and buried by Haupt near the four cases of explosives.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY COLONEL ROYALL.

(P.1807). That Thiel had the equivalent of a high school education and had been in America from April, 1927 to March, 1941.

(P.1808). That all of Thiel's family connections were in Germany except the Neumanns in Detroit. That he had one brother killed during the war and another badly wounded. That the school was brought to his

attention in March, 1942.

1809 (P.1809). That he left the details of the burying of the boxes to Kerling. (P.1809). Thiel said it was a difficult thing for him to decide whether he would carry out the plan, but he thought that that there were some things he would do, although he did not want to kill anybody. He also said he supposed as time went on he would probably do some of those things. all 2

TESTIMONY OF CHARLES H. STANLEY, A WITNESS
FOR THE PROSECUTION, RECALLED.

(P.1811). ~~That Exhibit~~

That Exhibit P-22, a cap, P-32, a coat, P-39, pants, were exhibited to Thiel, who stated that they were similar to the uniform worn by him on the submarine, obtained in Berlin, and left on the submarine at the time of landing in Florida. That P-28 and P-39 are shovels similar to the ones used in burying the explosives in Florida on June 17, and were brought to the submarine.

TESTIMONY OF JOHN G. WILLIS, SPECIAL
AGENT, F.B.I., NEW YORK OFFICE, A WITNESS
FOR THE PROSECUTION.

(P.1813). On June 29, 1942, witness went to the 86th Street branch of the Corn Exchange National Bank, having authority from Anthony Cramer to open a box at that bank. That the box was opened and 70 fifty dollar bills were found. That Cramer said the bills in the box were the property of Werner Thiel, and given to him by Thiel.

TESTIMONY OF SPENCER J. BRAYTON, A
WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION, RECALLED
FOR CROSS-EXAMINATION BY COLONEL
ROYALL.

(P.1828). Cross-examination by Colonel Royall.

That witness was present during a portion of the time when Kerling was being interrogated by the F.B.I., and was present part of the time when Donagan was also present. That Donagan did not strike, push or otherwise contact forcibly Kerling, nor did witness see Donagan take Kerling by the hair.

TESTIMONY OF EARL HIRSH, A WITNESS
FOR THE PROSECUTION RECALLED FOR
CROSS-EXAMINATION.

Cross-Examination

(P.1850). Questions by Colonel Royall.

(P.1850). That witness was present during a part of the time Haupt was being questioned; practically all of the time with the exception of a few moments here and there. Haupt in the course of his conversation stated he did not leave his home in Chicago with the intention of going to Germany, but left to go to Mexico and Nicaragua. That he ran out of funds in Mexico City, ran across an individual named Hans Sass, who introduced him to the German Consul in Mexico City, and arranged to transport Haupt to Japan. Haupt signed a contract to repay the money.

(P.1851). That at the time the boat arrived in Yokohama, Japan, he was met by persons from the German and Japanese consulate offices, or the Gestapo; that he was practically taken into custody, although

a good part of the time he had freedom of motion. That he later received a telegram requesting that he return to Tokyo, and did so.

(P.1852). When he got to Germany, he wanted to return to the United States, and this was the only means that he would be able to afford to get back. That he said he accepted the proposition for he said it was the only means of returning to the United States. That he thought going to the school was the only means he had of going to the United States.

(P.1852). That he stated he was unable to obtain work in Germany, and he was occasionally annoyed by the Gestapo.

TESTIMONY OF DUANE L. TRAYNOR, WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION
REGALLED FOR CROSS-EXAMINATION.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY COLONEL RISTINE:

(P.1853). Witness was the one at F.B.I. Headquarters with whom Dasch first communicated in Washington. The communication was by telephone, and Dasch stated he would like to come earlier than the witness had suggested. Witness told him an agent would come and pick him up, and bring him to headquarters.

(P.1854). That this was the first indication witness had of the location of any of the group now being tried. Witness had received no word from New York to the effect that Dasch would come to Washington. That during the time witness was talking to Dasch, Dasch expressed a desire to see Mr. Hoover. That witness told him that Mr. Hoover was not available to see, but might possibly see him while he was in Washington, although he could not be assured of that.

(P.1855). Dasch stated he had a mission in coming here, which was to fight Hitler and his Nazi crew; that he could not fight it in Germany, and had to find a way to get out; that he was coming and furnishing this information as a means towards gaining that end. He expressed a desire to fight Hitler in his own way by propaganda. That he stated he wanted to give his story his own way, and that was the only way he wanted to tell it. He was afforded that privilege.

(P.1856). He at first refused to give concrete facts that the Department was interested in, and that he mentioned the names of the others during the statement on the first day, but gave no information as to where they might be located until 11:30 the first night. He gave the name and location of Burger. That this information was furnished New York.

(P.1856). That Dasch first indicated he might hold back something until he got in touch with other persons. D

1857 (P.1859). That witness spent the night of June 19th with Dasch in his hotel room. That Dasch did show witness the brief case and money which he had in the room. That witness saw the notations that Dasch had made on the envelopes. That a notation was "Content, \$83,350 money from German Gov. for their proper purpose but to be used to fight them Nazis."

(P.1861). That the notation was written on the stationery of the Hotel Governor Clinton.

(P.1861). That Dasch showed witness two suitcases, and that witness noticed clothing hanging in the closet, although he did not examine it. That Dasch said he had brought the money from New York to Washington, and willingly and cheerfully showed these things to him.

(P.1862). That Dasch expressed pleasure at having obtained that large amount of money which he thought he would be able to use to fight Hitler. Witness told Dasch he had installed guards in order to be certain the money did not disappear and also for Dasch's protection.

(P.1863). Dasch stated he was willing to further co-operate with the F.B.I. in regard to any matter respecting defense measures. Witness discussed with Dasch other subjects as Dasch having just come from Germany, he would have information that might be of value, such as propaganda, radio communications, and so forth. That Dasch was particularly interested in having an opportunity to talk over the radio to the German people for propaganda purposes.

(P.1864). That he was willing to co-operate in tracking down people who, under the protection of American citizenship, were helping the present German government.

(P.1864). That witness pointed out he had two primary tasks; one was defensive in locating as quickly as possible anyone who was going to blow up and damage part of our war industry. After that was accomplished, the offensive objective from the standpoint of propaganda could be considered.

(P.1865). That when witness first talked with Dasch, he had the impression he was sincere and truthful. That things have since arisen that makes witness whether he was.

(P.1866). Witness told Dasch in the course of his interrogation that he believed in Dasch's sincerity and truthfulness; that he told Dasch that five others had been taken into custody, and Dasch agreed to give further testimony respecting the other two. (P.1869). Dasch stated he had furnished all the information he had previously. He had previously furnished information which would be helpful in the apprehension of the other two.

(P.1870). Dasch furnished information on Neubauer, as to his name, description and identified a picture; also furnished the name of Haupt, and that he had parents in Chicago, as well as the description of Haupt. That these two were the ones not apprehended at the time referred to.

(P.1870). That Dasch, shortly after he started his statement, expressed a desire to be thrown in the same concentration camp with the rest of them, so that they would not know he had furnished information.

(P.1873). QUESTIONS BY COLONEL ROYALL.

(P.1873). That the answers to Colonel Ristine's question involving the reason for witness's change of mind about Dasch does not involve any other defendants.

Q by Col Ristine
(P.1873). That one of the things that made witness doubt the truthfulness of Dasch's statement was that Dasch had told him that under no circumstances must the German Government learn of his part in these proceedings for fear they would kill his mother and father, and that later, when Dasch was in New York, he changed in mind, and thought it would be all right for the world to know about his part in these proceedings, and that his mother and relatives in Germany would have to look out for themselves. His mother knew what he was going to do,

and she had confidence in him, and told him to do the right thing. That after having found that out, witness was doubtful as to just what was the truth and how much of what Dasch had told him was the truth.

(P.1874). That on Sunday subsequent to Dasch's agreeing to enter a plea of guilty, the newspapers carried a story of the arrest and apprehension of eight spies and confessions by them. Dasch had agreed to enter a plea which he said was not true, in order to protect his father and mother.

(P.1874). That the newspaper story indicated that Dasch was picked up and arrested subsequent to the apprehension and location of some of the others, and carried the story of all eight men. That witness understands that Dasch was furnished newspapers, and that Dasch did see the stories in the newspapers about the apprehension of all eight men.

(P.1875). It was the change of Dasch's mind respecting the entering of the plea of guilty that caused witness to wonder about the correctness of his other statements.

(P.1876). That all statements contained in the 254-page statement of Dasch have not been checked but those that had been checked were found to be true.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.1876). Dasch said he landed on Long Island on June 13th. That he first mentioned Burger's name and address at 11:30 on the night of June 19; that he mentioned the names of the other defendants several times during the days he was questioned, with more detailed data on the 20th. In the case of Werner Thiel, it was the 22nd before he furnished the true identity.

(P. 1877). That he had not told his mother what the real purpose of his trip was, but he indicated to her that he was going to South America to work on propaganda for the government, and that she did not know his part in coming over here as a saboteur and fighting the German Government from the United States.

(P.1877). Another thing which made witness doubt Dasch was the fact that he had never satisfactorily explained why he waited from June 13th to June 19th to notify the F.B.I. of the landing of these people. That had Dasch first told us of the matter on the 13th or 14th, it would have been possible to apprehend the group that was landing in Florida and to get the submarine and its crew, as well as to enable the F.B.I. to put in a warning to the Navy in an effort to apprehend a submarine that was supposed to land at Cape Hatteras, about the 15th of June.

RECROSS-EXAMINATION BY COLONEL RISTINE.

1078 (P.1878). That witness knew Dasch had called the F.B.I. on the next morning after he landed. That when Dasch came to Washington, he did not know exactly what agency he could talk to, but indicated he wanted to talk with the F.B.I., by calling them, on Sunday, June 14th. Dasch stated before calling the F.B.I. he had called Colonel Kramer in Army Intelligence, was unable to reach him, and then called the F.B.I.

(P.1879). That witness knows of nothing said by anybody that Dasch would be incarcerated for six months.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY COLONEL ROYALL.

(P. 1880). That Dasch said Burger was waiting in New York to hear from him. That Burger was present when Dasch communicated with the F.B.I.

(P.1881). That Burger made no statement to witness relative to submarine landing on Cape Hatteras.

(At this point, the previous ^{reference to another submarine} sentence was stricken from the record).

(P.1881). So far as witness knows, one thing in Burger's statement has been checked, and that was the story of his relationship with a girl by the name of Eva Schuetz was checked; that witness has not talked with her, but that she knows Burger.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION.

(P.1883). Dasch first came on Friday to the F.B.I. That he stated he had spent Monday in buying clothes, and that Monday night he had met Heinck and Quirin, and thereafter had gone to a waiters' club, which he had formerly been a member of. That he there talked with various people, played cards, Monday night, Tuesday and Tuesday night. That he stayed in the part of the day Wednesday, and went shopping that afternoon. That he stayed at the hotel Wednesday night, and left for Washington some time on Thursday.

RECROSS EXAMINATION BY COLONEL DISTINE:

(P.1884). That Dasch told the F.B.I. office in New York he would be in Washington the following Thursday or Friday, and asked them to notify the Washington office of his coming. The New York office, to witness's knowledge, never notified the Washington office.

(P.1884). Dasch said on Thursday he went down to the store and got clothing which he had previously ordered and which had been altered.

(At this point, previous remarks of the Attorney General, to the effect that the defense was desirous of getting Dasch's statement in the record so that it would not be necessary to call Dasch as a witness, was stricken from the records.)

(P.1887). (At this point, the prosecution rested).

(P.1887). At this point, Colonel Royall presented a motion on behalf of Haupt, Heinck, Kerling, Neubauer, Quirin and Thiel for a finding of not guilty on charge 2. Colonel Royall further made a motion for dismissal of the other charges against the defendants named. (P.1891).

(P.1891). Colonel Royall also made a motion to dismiss the third charge on behalf of the named defendants and on behalf of Haupt.

(P.1910). Each of the foregoing motions was not sustained, by the Commission. (P.1910). (At this point moved for finding of not guilty on all charges on behalf of the defendant Dasch.)

(P.1930). At this point, Colonel Royall made a motion for a finding of not guilty on behalf of the defendant Burger on all charges.

(P.1960). Each of the foregoing motions was not sustained by the Commission.

(P.1961). At this point, Colonel Royall stated that it was his intention to present the evidence of the various defendants in the following order, namely: Haupt, Neubauer, Thiel, Kerling, Heinck, Quirin, Dasch, Burger. Colonel Bistine agrees to that order.

(P.1962). The rights of the defendant Haupt were explained to him by the President of the Commission, and the defendant Haupt, after answering that he understood his rights, took the stand and took an oath as a witness.

(Testimony of Herbert Joannes Wilhelm Godhelp Haupt, testifying in his own behalf.)

(P.1963). That witness is one of the accused; that he is 22 years of age, born at Stettin, Germany. That he came to this country with his mother, at the age of 5, living here seventeen years. That his parents are American citizens, his father being naturalized in 1930, and his mother in 1940. That from the time he arrived in this country until the present date, he has been to Germany once. That at the time he was five, until the summer of 1941 he resided in Chicago, Illinois.

(P.1964). That prior to leaving Chicago, he was an apprentice optician, at Simpson Optical Company for 2½ years, where he worked on Government orders, making camera lenses and microscopes.

(P.1965). That he left Chicago on June 16, 1941 to go to Mexico. That he was associating with a girl named Gerda Stuckmann, to whom his parents objected. That the girl's parents also objected to his going with her. That she became pregnant and he did not know what to do, so he left for Mexico.

(P.1966). That he took a letter from the Pan-American Club introducing him to someone in Nicaragua, so he could get a job on a plantation. That he went to Mexico and found he could not get to Nicaragua because he could not obtain a visa. That he sent cards to his parents from Dallas and St. Louis. That he went to Mexico City, tried to get a visa, but could not. That at the time of leaving Chicago, he had no intention of going anywhere except Nicaragua, and possibly down in South America. That he had no intention at time of going either to Japan or Germany.

(P.1967). That most of his friends knew of his plans of going to Mexico, Nicaragua and possibly South America, as well as the lieutenant who questioned me where I was going. That the boss knew, and the superintendent. That his parents also knew he was going to Mexico. That Lieutenant Page of the Ordnance Department told him he would find conditions not very good in Mexico.

(P.1968). (At this point Colonel Royall stated he intended to offer later in evidence the report of this Ordnance officer).

(P.1969). That he discussed with Mr. Egan, the owner of this plant, with Mrs. Jordan, the mother of his best friend, who is now reported missing in the Philippines, and with Miss Stuckmann.

(P.1969). That in Mexico, when he was unable to get a visa, he wrote his mother stating that if he did not get work, he would come home, which was his intention at that time. He left his clothing, other than a few articles, at home, because he did not need clothing in the tropics. That he left his watch, ring and other personal belongings also.

(P.1970). That Wolfgang Vergin went with him, also Hugo Trosken. That Trosken is in Waukegan and Vergin is in Germany.
(P.1970). That when his money was about gone, he met a fellow named Hans Sasse, whom he did not know before, who introduced him to Von Wallenburg of the German Consulate. Von Wallenburg said witness could not get work in Mexico because he had only a tourist permit.

(P.1971). That he had been in Mexico about three weeks when he met Sasse, and it was about a week later that he met Von Wallenburg. That he told Von Wallenburg that he had no money and the only thing he could do would be to return to the United States. That Von Wallenburg offered him a job in a monastery in Japan, stated that he would have to pay back for the trip, when he was working in the monastery. That prior to this, he had written to his uncle. That until this time, he had no plans to go to Japan, nor any intention of going there.

(P.1971). That he went to Japan.

(P.1971). That at the time he was talking to Von Wallenburg, nothing was said with reference to going anywhere except Japan.

(P.1972). That on arrival in Japan, his passport was taken, and a permit was issued to him, and he was taken to the hotel in Yokohama by three or four officers from the German Consulate, and Japanese police. That they then went to the German House in Tokyo, where he was given 100 yen to live on for the first week, and then taken to Shingasaki to take a look at the monastery, which turned out to be a labor camp; that the conditions were so bad, he decided he would not work there, and came back to Tokyo and so told them. He returned to Tokyo and were given 100 yen again, and went to the mountains where he stayed a few days and were called back to Tokyo, where they went to the German House, and he was told that he could not be given any more money and the only thing he could do was to become a sailor on a ship. He was not told where he was going to sail.

(P.1973). They went to Kobi and boarded the German liner Schornhorst. That there was nothing else to do, as otherwise they would have been vagrants in Japan. That he thought of going to the American Consulate, and one of the Germans there did, but was not allowed to get off the ship and came back to Japan where the German officers got him and that was the last that was heard about him.

(P.1973). That he stayed in Japan about one month, being three weeks on the Schornhorst, where he was trained as a sailor, and then put on another German liner, the Elsa-Rebinger and were taken to sea without knowing where he was going.

(P.1974). That he met another ship in the south seas where he started working. That the first he learned that the ship was going to Germany was after they passed the Gilbert Islands, approximately three weeks after they left Japan. That they sailed around Cape Horn to Bordeaux, France.

(P.1974). While in Japan, he sent a telegram to his parents telling them he was in Japan. That he had no plans at that time. That he landed in Bordeaux the day Germany declared war on the United States. That the other sailors were allowed to go on shore, but he and his friend were kept on board, and were interviewed by the Gestapo and the police. That the friend was Wolfgang Vergin who had left the United States with him. That the other boy had gotten a job from a customs official on the border of Mexico, and had gone to California.

(P.1976). The reason given for his detention on the boat at Bordeaux was because they did not know whether he was a German or American, and did not know why he came to Germany. They stayed on the boat for three days, and were then taken to Paris, where they were furnished an overcoat, shoes and cap. They went to Saarbrücken where they were asked where they wished to go. That Hergin went to East Prussia, and witness went to Stettin. That money was given to them for train fare for which they signed.

(P.1976). That witness obligated himself for the expenses from Mexico on.

(P.1976). That when he arrived at his grandmother's in Stettin, he intended to work as an optician.

(P.1977). He registered with the police in Stettin and with the Gestapo, and tried to get a working card, which he was unable to receive because he was not a member of the Party and he said they didn't know whether he was American or German.

(P.1977). That he intended to stay in Germany until the war was over, and then return to the United States, because you can't get out of Germany. (P.1977). He made various attempts to get work, but was unable to do so, and I was bothered every second day by the police and the Gestapo. They sent me letters, and I went to the Gestapo four times in one week, and gave them statements as to the fillings in my teeth, where I got them, and statement about his folks, whether they were Americans or Germans.

(P.1978). That he attempted to get relief from an organization in Stettin, but could not do so because at that time he had no relatives in the war or at the front.

(P.1978). He received a letter from the editors of The Caucasus, a paper written for the soldiers at the Russian front, telling him to come to Berlin and write a story about his trip, in which he had run the British Blockade.

(P.1979). That he received two medals through the mail, both from the German government, for running the Blockade, but that he never wore them.

(P.1979). That he went to Berlin after receiving a second letter, borrowing the money to go there. That he went to No. 5 Ranke Street, where he met Walter Kappe, who asked about his trip, and had a girl write it down. That Kappe gave him 120 marks, and told him to go home.

(P.1980). That in two weeks, he received another telegram from Berlin to return; that he assumed it was in connection with the story. That no other suggestion had been made to him up to that time by Kappe or anyone else. He went to see Kappe who said that he was a Lieutenant of the Germany Army, and had an offer to make. That Kappe stated that he could not get work, that his father's brother Otto Froehling was in a concentration camp, and my father's brother had been in one. That the only way witness could amount to anything would be to go back to the United States.

(P.1981). That witness said he would go back to the United States, and had to sign a pledge not to disclose anything. He was not told the purpose for which he was to go to the United States, and did not talk with anyone else there except Kappe.

(P.1981). That he went back to Kappe a third time; taking his belongings, and there met Dasch, whom he had not known before. That they

talked about the United States, and Dasch called Kappe who said to send me home until Easter was over. That Dasch said nothing about his purpose in coming to Berlin, other than Dasch was working with Kappe.

(P.1982). That on his next trip, he met Kappe, Barthe and the other defendants who was told that he was going to a farm in Brandenburg, and that they went to the farm with Dasch. (P.1982). That on the second Kappe said that Wergin would be held in Germany in case witness had any intention to turn this thing in or double-cross them. He did not see Wergin after that. That he did not know the purpose of the school until he arrived there. That he attended the school to get back to the United States. That he intended to carry out none of the plans, and only attended because it was the only possible way to get back to his folks. He knew of no other way to get back.

(P.1983). He was at school approximately three weeks, where he was taught sabotage methods, and practised pistol shooting once or twice. That he was told he would not take any firearms along and should not use any. That Kappe and Barthe said they were to harm no one. That they were given no instructions with reference to spying, getting information and transmitting it to Germany. That they studied secret writing for the purpose of communicating within the group. That he knew nothing about the handkerchiefs with writing on them, and had no such handkerchief. That he did not carry with him any address in Germany to communicate with, and that no one in his group was given instructions to communicate with anyone in Germany in his presence.

(P.1985). That after the school, he went to his grandmother's, and gave her a letter to send to his mother after the war was over, in case something happened to him on the U boat, or while landing in the United States, and that the letter was with reference to his purpose in coming over here.

(P.1985). That he was not much trusted by the others while in Germany. That he was not a member of the Nazi party, and had never been one.

(P.1985). That he was instructed not to go home, not to see his old friends, nor his girl friend. That these instructions were given in Germany by Kappe and on the U boat by Kerling.

(P.1985). That he had one false registration card made out by Dasch in his own name, which, taken by Kappe and another with the name of Lawrence Jordan on it, and was instructed to use that name in the United States. That he never used that name; he used his own.

(P.1986). He first used his name upon registering at the Mayflower Hotel in Jacksonville, where he registered in his own name. That he went from Jacksonville to Chicago and saw his parents and friends, as well as his former employees, and Gerta Struckmann. That while in Jacksonville, he purchased a wrist watch, and gave them his correct name, and an address in Chicago, Illinois.

(P.1987). He never intended to commit any acts of sabotage, and intended to go home about the 6th of July. That the reason for the 6th of July was that I found out from Hermann Neubauer that they were all coming to Chicago at the Knickerbocker Hotel on that date. That he did not tell anyone what he planned to do, because it would endanger him. Upon arriving in the United States, he went to Chicago alone, the others going to Cincinnati.

(P.1990). Doubt was expressed as to the possible success of the plan by the other defendants in France, only once or twice. The money they were given contained certain gold certificates, and it was pointed out to Kappe that these bills would focus attention on them, because of apprehension. That everyone was nervous.

(P.1990). After arriving in the United States, he did not discuss with anyone of the other defendants his plan to turn them in.

(P.1990) That he did discuss the fact that he was not going on with the plan with Neubauer, twice in Chicago. That Neubauer said he could never go through with it. That this was the Wednesday after landing in Chicago. That this was the Wednesday after landing in Chicago. That he never discussed with anyone else the fact that he was not going to participate and did not intend to participate in the sabotage plan.

(P.1991). That after returning to Chicago, he registered for the draft on Monday, and obtained work at the Simpson's Optical Company. That he saw Gerda Stuckmann two days after he returned to Chicago. That they discussed the point of her having had a child and the child having died, and decided to get married. He gave Miss Stuckmann \$10.00 to get a blood test.

(P.1992). He purchased an automobile after getting to Chicago, using money brought from Germany, in order to have an automobile and to take a honeymoon with Gerda.

(P.1993). That he had instructions before landing to get an automobile to drive to Florida and pick up the explosives. That these instructions came from Kappe. On the U-boat, Kerling heard of the gasoline shortage and said the idea would have to be dropped. That when he landed, Kerling was not expecting him to use any automobile in connection with the explosives. The automobile was not purchased for that purpose. That when he bought the automobile, he knew that gas rationing was in effect, in Florida, and that he had never told any F.B.I. agent that he had purchased the automobile for sabotage purposes.

(P.1994). That Kappe gave him the address of his uncle, Walter Froehling. (P.1995). That he told his mother of his whole trip, and what he was instructed to do. That he told her he had received money from the German government, but did not tell her the nature of his work.

(P.1996). That he was followed by the F.B.I. twice, once about three days before he was apprehended and secondly, the evening before he was apprehended. That he made no effort to escape Chicago or leave home.

(P.1996). That the FBI questioned him for approximately two days, and then dictated a statement which he was allowed to correct or object to. He told the F.B.I. all the facts he had told the Commission. (P.1997). He told the F.B.I. that Peter Burger beat him to turning them in. He stated he knew Burger would do it because he had been in a concentration camp and had told him about the horrors he suffered and had seen other people suffer. That he heard Burger say in Germany he hated the Gestapo more than anything on earth, and that his wife had lost a child because of the treatment of her by them.

QUESTIONS BY COLONEL DOWELL.

(P.1998). That when he left Chicago, he was working for Mr. Egan, President of the Simpson Optical Company. He told Mr. Egan he was leaving, but not the real reason therefor, although he told others. He told him he was going to Mexico and Nicaragua. (P.1998). That prior to leaving, he attempted to get a United States passport to Guatemala, because the latter which he had referred to someone in Guatemala. That he applied at the old post office in Chicago, Illinois, paying \$10.00 for the passport; but it was never received, and his mother received \$9.00 in return. That he left with Wargin and Troesken, but that Troesken left them at the border and went to California. That only one job was offered, and Troesken took it. (P.1999). That upon arriving in Mexico, he tried to obtain employment, but could not. He had about \$80.00 when he left Chicago, and he wrote many times, --once or twice, and received a letter from his mother in Mexico. He sent a birthday telegram to his mother on June 29th. He only had a tourist card and could not work in Mexico. Communications received while he was living with his grandmother were from Kappe. That Barth is a relative of Dasch. That he told his grand-

mother he never intended to carry out the sabotage instructions. (P.2001). That his father and mother have never been members of the Nazi party, or any German organization, except the Schubert Sing Society of which witness is also a member; that his father is a member of the German Day organization in Chicago, which is a pro-American organization. That his mother had never been a member of any organization of that kind.

(P.2002). That he was given the name of Larry Jordan in Paris, by Kappe, whose name was suggested by witness. That he did not use that name in America because it would have been a crime. (P.2003). Witness was excited with the rest on discovering the gold certificates because he was afraid the gold certificates would be apprehended.

(Defendant's Exhibit D is a copy of a telegram witness sent to his mother from Mexico).

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P. 2005). That his statement which was read in open court was correct, except that it did not include all statements. That it did not include his trip out to sea, that he did not know he was going to Germany, until he was out at sea. That the reason they did not tell them where they were going, was because they could have gone to any bar and disclosed that they were going to Germany, and would have been apprehended by British agents. (P.2006). That his statement excluded statement of his intentions in coming over here, that he had left his clothing here and he never had any idea of going to Germany; that had he intended going to Germany to pass a winter, that he would have taken winter clothes. That he told this to Agents Hirsch and Rice. He told this to them continuously every day, that he was with them, as well as other agents who were guards in New York.

included statements that
(P.2007). His statement also admitted he never had any intention of going through with sabotage; that he had told Hirsch and Rice this, that Mr. Hirsch said he was sorry that witness had not come in and told the F.B.I. the information the first time he was in the office. That he had told them this practically every day, how he had been hounded in Germany by the Gestap and the police and the army, and that they never trusted him.

(P.2010). That his statement was given to him to read before he signed it, made corrections thereon, and that he cannot remember whether the fact that he stated he never intended to go through with this job was included in the statement or not. He signed two statements, the second of which had nothing to do with his involvement.

(P.2012). He made no remonstrance when the statement was presented to him that anything had been left out. He first told the agents his story and they dictated it. That he made some corrections on the spelling. (P.2013). He left Chicago in June, 1941, because Gerda Stuckmann was pregnant and wanted me to marry her. He left because of the shame it would bring upon his family. That the reason he did not want to marry her was because of her condition, and the way she had been talked about. (P.2014)1 That he saw Miss Stuckmann before he left and told her that he was leaving. He told her he would probably send for her if he made good in Mexico. He did not talk to her about coming back, but told her he was going to Mexico. He said she assumed he would be back in three or four weeks. (P.2016). She made him promise that he would send for her. That at that time she had been pregnant for four months. That he had \$80.00 when he reached Mexico City, and lived on it for three weeks. That he was going to the American Consulate, but changed his mind on the way. That his plans were to stay in Mexico and get a job, if he could not get to Nicaragua. (P.2017). That after he found he

could not get a job, he met Hans Sass. That if he had not gotten the opportunity to go to Japan, he would have come back. That at that time he preferred the job at the monastery to coming back to the United States. That he did not telegraph his family for money because they had none, and he was trying to help them.

2023 (P.2018). That the reason he did not go to the American Consul was because he met a man who said the Consul had no money to send people back to the United States. (P.2020). That prior to talking to this man, he had thought of going to the American Consulate to get back to the United States. That he went from Mexico to Japan, the tickets being given to him. (P.2022). That he did not go to the German Consulate, but received the ticket in the Nippon Steamship office from Sass, who told him the German Consulate paid for the tickets. That Von Vollenburg was the one who gave him the tickets. That Von Vollenburg told him that there was a war with Russia and he couldn't get to Germany. That he does not know whether Von Vollenburg thought he was trying to get back to Germany. (P.2023). That he had no papers other than a passport issued by the German Consulate, which was stamped by the Japanese office. He made out certain papers for passport, and gave his nationality as American. (P.2024). The American Consul did not visa this passport. (P.2025) That he did not know who actually signed the passport, although he assumed the German Consul, or someone in his office signed it. (P.2027). "Wasn't the reason that the German Consul signed it that you told the German Consul or told Von Vollenburg that you were a German citizen?" "A. No, because in order to tell him that I would have to show him some papers that I am a German citizen, and I could not."

(P.2027). That he did not go to the German Consulate in Yokohama. That he was taken to a hotel by German Consulate officials and Japanese police. That they took his passport and issued a permit of stay. That he got his passport back when I was on the ship Scharnhorst. That he was in Japan three weeks. That he did not call on any German consulate or American Consulate in Japan. That he left Japan in Kobe sometime in September on a German boat. That he had no other papers than the passport; on the boat, they gave out seaman paper for him. (P.2029). That he signed the paper but did not take an oath. That the paper stated he was a seaman hired in Kobe, Japan, and at the end of the trip in Bordeaux, they filled out the number of days on the trip, and put a stamp on there, discharged. The paper gave his nationality as American. (P.2030). These papers were given on the third German Boat. That they gave him a choice of being a vagrant in Japan, or a seaman. That a vagrant would be shipped to a part of town where there are nothing but prostitutes, and he would never get out.

2031- (P.2031). That they went around Cape Horn and were on the last vessel 107 days. (P.2031). That he received the iron cross, Second Class and a special decoration for running the blockade, as well as a citation. That the citation said that every seaman on a German ship which ran the blockade is entitled to the iron cross. That there is another American citizen in Germany who received the same decoration.

2032 (P.2033). That he first arrived in Germany at Saarbrücken. That the boat trip ended at Bordeaux. That he went from Bordeaux to Paris, staying there three or four days. That he had never been to Paris before. That he was there again when he came to Lorient. That he never worked in Paris and never had a secretary working for him there, and did not say to his father or to his mother, or anyone, that he had. That at Saarbrücken (P.2034) he had a German passport, which he kept until he went to the school. That he was met at the boat at Bordeaux by the Gestapo. That they had no record of me at that time, and "I told them we were hired as seamen at Japan, and had just come from there. He did not tell them he was an American citizen, and they did not inquire. He told them that both his parents were American citizens. That they were kept

aboard because they were believed to be Americans. (P. 2036). "So far as I know, I am an American." (P. 2036). "The Gestapo thought I was a spy". (P. 2037). Prior to going to school, he was seen by the Gestapo on the average of three times a week. That they seemed suspicious, and would not let him work. That they did not know his citizenship.

(P. 2038). Witness first heard of the sabotage plan in April, by Kappe. That Kappe was dressed in uniform part of the time, and part of the time in civilian clothes. That Kappe was a lieutenant in the German Army. (P. 2039). That Sass never suggested that witness go to Germany to aid the German cause, and that Kappe stated he learned of witness through Sass. (P. 2041). Exhibit P-356 is a photograph of Kappe, Barth and two other unknown persons. That he had not known Barth in this country, and had not heard of him before talking to Dasch. (P. 2042). That Exhibit P-357, is Paul Schmidt, who was at the sabotage school. That he was also known as Swenson. Witness met Swenson in Mexico City and (P. 2045) in Japan, and next in the office of the editors of the *Kaukasus*. (P. 2046). That Swenson was a British subject.

(P. 2047). That no one was at any of the conferences with Kappe until the last one when I went up with my belongings.

(P. 2048). He was told by Kappe in Berlin about the school. That he was told he was to be trained to go back to the United States, but not told what he would be trained for. (P. 2049). That he had a choice of going to the school or probably ending up in a concentration camp with a very bad record in Germany. His father's brother and mother's brother had been in a concentration camp. That Kappe did not seem to have a record but knew all about him. That it was not until they arrived at the school that he was told the whole plan.

(P. 2050). That he never ^{took} an oath. That he signed a contract in which there was an agreement to pay him 250 marks a month. That he does not know who ran the school but that Kappe was in charge of the school. That the contract was with the German government. It stated that after the war, he could get a job in Germany as an optician. *He*

(P. 2051). The second paper was an oath of silence and the third paper was not an oath, but a written statement. The third paper said that in case of arrest, I was not to disclose anything that happened.

(P. 2052). That the uniforms were issued at the Naval Supply Station in Berlin. That these were work clothes and similar to the type of uniform produced in evidence except the buttons. That the buttons were different on some of the uniforms. That some had plain buttons and others had naval buttons.

(P. 2053). That he was issued a coat, a cap, pants, socks, and shoes. That they were all substantially alike and were fatigue clothes. The clothes were similar to those worn by the sailors on the submarine.

(P. 2054). That his medals were left in Germany.

(P.2054). That he registered at the Mayflower Hotel, although he had never been in Florida before. From there he went to Chicago. That he was in Jacksonville one night and one afternoon, and that he did not know at that time that there was an F.B.I. office in Jacksonville.

(P.2055). That upon his arrival in Chicago, he went to the home of his uncle, Walter Freehling, but spent the night at home. (P.2056). That his father, mother, uncle and aunt, and two children were there. That he was at home seven nights.

(P.2056). He registered under his own name at the Mayflower Hotel in Jacksonville, giving no street address.

(P.2057). That Exhibit P-258 is a copy of his registration which contained a street address which is an address the Haupts' had had up to one month before Haupt left Chicago. That this was the last address Haupt could remember.

(P.2059). That in Mexico he had used the new address, and had used the correct one in Japan.

(P.2060). He stayed at his uncle's house one night because he was to receive a telephone call from Hermann Neubauer, who was coming to Chicago. That Neubauer called him the next day, on June 20th, and they met downtown. (P.2062). That he went to his uncle's because that was the address given him by Kappe, and where they were supposed to communicate.

(P.2063). They told his uncle they had come from France on a submarine; Haupt told him about the schooling, but not the nature of the schooling. That his uncle or father told him he was liable to be caught, and they knew "I was not sent over here to do any good". (P.2064). To this, "I told them to leave me alone for a while; I was awfully nervous".

(P.2064). His mind was made up the minute Kappe suggested going to the United States, on what he was going to do. He planned to turn the group in on July 6th, and planned to help the American authorities all he could. That he had gone to the F.B.I. to tell them he was back in the United States, because they had been inquiring about him in December on account of his selective service. (P.2065). That the F.B.I. knew he was in Japan. That he was nervous for fear he would be picked up, before July 6th, on which date he was coming to the F.B.I. (P.2066). That he did not go to the F.B.I. at that time because he didn't know where anyone was, and picked the 6th of July because he heard there was to be a meeting in Cincinnati the 4th, between Dasch and Kerling, and that they were coming to Chicago on the 6th. That he was afraid of other men that came over before he did, and of the Gestapo. (P.2068). That he was so much afraid of the Gestapo as he was of his own accomplices, particularly the Long Island group.

(P.2068). That he had talked to Neubauer and he said he would not go through with it, and that Kerling was not and "After all, I became acquainted with them in Germany, and they are not hoodlums and I did not want to be a rat, either."

(P.2069). That Neubauer was so nervous he could not sleep and jumped at every noise. That Neubauer said that Kerling was also nervous, and afraid to get in a taxicab. That Thiel was so nervous that he held his hand over the earphone of the telephone when it was hung up. That he talked to Neubauer about this on Sunday for the first time. (P.2070). That Neubauer stated he was not going through with it

and knew the other two didn't have the nerve to do it. That after Heubauer told him this, he thought it would be a dirty thing to turn them in. (P.2071). That he knew Burger was going to turn them in. That he had told witness how he had suffered in Germany. Ha

(P.2071). That he was going to talk to the others and give them a chance, and tell them he was going to turn them in if they did not agree. This applied to the others as well. That he was going to consult only Dasch of the Long Island group, because he was the only man that was coming to Chicago. That he did not know where the others were. Ha

(P.2073) If he told the men who landed in Jacksonville that he was going to turn all of them in, they would come to the F.B.I with him and give themselves up.

(P.2073). That he was mostly afraid of Dasch because he was the first man that witness met of that group, and at that time, Dasch had given him a warning talk. That Dasch was in very good with Kappe, and anything he suggested in respect to the organization and teaching of the school was done. (P.2075). That Dasch was very close to Kappe. D

(P.2075). He told his father that he came from France on a submarine and about the money, although he had not told him that he had worked in Paris with a Secretary. That he had not told this to anyone else either. (P.2076). That he told his father that they were trained in Germany to hinder production in the United States. (P.2077). That he did not tell his father he was going to give himself up. He told his mother not to worry as everything would turn out all right, although he did not tell her in so many words that he was going to give himself up. He told nobody he was going to give himself up. (P.2078). That Wergin offered assistance. Ha

(P.2078). That he came to the F.B.I. about his registration of his own volition. That it did not occur to him to tell them about himself and his group at that time. (P.2080). That no number was given to him in the German Army at the time of going to the sabotage school. That he was mad at Walter Kappe because he gave them gold certificates, since it would have meant their apprehension if they had used one. If he would have been apprehended on landing, he never would have had any excuse. (P.2081). That he wanted a chance to tell the truth. (P.2081). That he did not decide a car until he spoke to Gerda. That they were going to use it on their honeymoon. That he thought that after giving the facts to the F.B.I. they would allow him to work, and go on his honeymoon. Ha

(P.2082). That Kerling told him at first not to go to Chicago, and later consented. Kerling knew from Kappe how to get in touch with him in Chicago, at his Uncle Froehling's house. (P.2083). That he gave Kerling Bartler's phone number, but never got in touch with Bartler. (P.2083). That Kerling gave him a zipper bag at Jacksonville, and told him to leave it at the Froehling home. (P.2084). That Kerling intended to change the money in the other bags in New York into other currency. That he did not tell Kerling he was going to use the money in his money belt to buy an automobile. (P.2085). That Thiel was extremely nervous in Jacksonville, but did not say he was not going through with the plans. That no one ever told him in Germany that they were not going through with the plans. That he never told anyone in Germany that he was not going through with it, outside of his family. That he told his uncle and aunt in Germany about the sabotage school, and told them he was not going through with it.. Ha

(P.2086). That his uncle in Germany is not a member of the Nazi party, and not in good standing with the German government J

and his uncle told him if he wore the iron cross that he could not stay in his home. (P.2086). That it was not intended that he should get a job, but it was intended that he should get papers from some friend in the United States, including social security card and draft registration card. That they were instructed to start a business to show that they were employed. That if they were caught, they were supposed to use a fake story, and not say they had been to Germany. That his story was to say that he was a British subject from a British ship, and either that he had never left the country, or had come back from Japan. (P.2087).

(P.2088). That he never planned to get caught, because he never planned to go through with the sabotage, as he intended to turn it in. That his plan to turn the thing in was not formulated until after he landed. That the only idea he had in Germany was getting home again.

(P.2088). "I can't be sure whether it was on the submarine or just after landing, when I really got to thinking that the only thing to do would be to turn it in, because even though I didn't want to go through with it and the only reason I came back was to be home, it would not stop somebody else from going through with it."

(P.2089). That he decided on the submarine to turn it in, but did not make a plan as to how he would do it. (P.2091). That he told the F.B.I. he had just returned from Mexico and (P.2092), that he had heard F.B.I. agents had been inquiring about him in December at his home. That he explained his absence from the United States by saying that he had become involved with a girl who accused him of being the parent of her child. That because of her customary drunkenness and other habits of running around with other men, he had refused to marry her.

(P.2093). That after returning, he talked to the girl, and decided the only thing to do to square things would be to marry her. That he told the F.B.I. he had spent most of the year living with the Indians in Mexico prospecting for gold. That this was not true. *Ha*

(P.2094). He told the F.B.I. that when he learned Schmidt and Sass were going to Tokyo, he gave them money and requested them to send a telegram to his mother from Tokyo. That this was not correct. (P.2095). That he told the F.B.I. that where he came from he would never have had a chance to turn this in. That the only reason for going to the F.B.I. was that he didn't want to be bothered until the 6th of July.

(P.2095). That Vergins and the Froehlings knew he was a German agent. *Ha*

TESTIMONY OF JAMES STEWART EAGAN, 925 LOTHROP AVENUE, RIVER FOREST, ILLINOIS, PRESIDENT OF THE SIMPSON OPTICAL MANUFACTURING COMPANY, A WITNESS FOR THE DEFENDANT HAUPT.

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2119). That he has been president of the Simpson Optical Company since 1933. (Witness identified Haupt.) (P.2120). That Haupt started working for him in January, 1939, and worked until June, 1941, reporting that he wanted to travel and to go to Mexico. That his work had been satisfactory. He has not seen Haupt since, and does not know of Haupt's applying for employment in his company.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2121). That Haupt was valuable to the extent that he had completed two and a half of eight years training as an optician.

That he talked to a man from the Ordnance Department about Haupt on June 13, 1941. (P.2122). That he would not pay the expenses of a workman of Haupt's skill from Germany to the United States, so as to be able to use him.

(P.2123). That Haupt did not say how long he was going to stay in Mexico, or when he was coming back. That he also mentioned Central America.

TESTIMONY OF HERBERT JOANNES WILHELM HODHELF HAUPT,
ONE OF THE ACCUSED, RECALLED FOR CROSS-
EXAMINATION.

(P.2124). That he was not given an army number, and does not know whether any of the others were. That it was suggested by Kappe that he use his own name. (P.2125). He was instructed by Kappe to state either that he had never left the United States, or had been traveling before getting into the army, or that he went to Mexico, and returned. (P.2126). That after being apprehended, he told the F.B.I. that Kerling was to get in touch with a girl, and that he, Kerling and the girl would go to Florida, take the explosives and traveling bags to New York. Haupt

(P.2127). That Kerling spoke of this a few days after they left France, after having heard about the gas rationing on the radio. That Kerling and Neubauer stated they heard gas rationing was to take effect all over the United States. (P.2129). That he knew his Uncle Froehling's old address, but did not know his new address, which was given to him by Kappe. (P.2130). That he took addresses with him, but threw them away when he left Mexico. (P.2131). That it was not the plan for him to register again.

(P.2131). That the money to be paid to him was to be paid by an organization in the name of which he did not see, because it was covered up when the contract was signed. (P.2132). That it was his understanding that the German Army was to pay the money. Ha

were

(P.2136). That the uniforms to be used in getting on the submarines, so that the French and British agents in France would not see civilians going in a German submarine, and the idea then arose between Kappe and the captain of the U-boat that if we wore the uniforms while landing, we would become military prisoners of war.

(P.2136). That he never renounced his American citizenship.

(P.2137). That he had about \$20.00 left in Mexico when he went on the Japanese ship. That Hans Sasse gave them a little money, about \$10, of his personal money.

(P.2137). That he first found out about the meeting in the Knickerbocker Hotel on July 6th from Neubauer on June 20th. (P.2139). That he did not tell anyone he had a secretary working for him in Paris. His father might have conceived this idea from his telling that he, Haupt, received clothes in Paris where there were a number of Germans there who had been interned before the French campaign and who were returning to Germany. He worked with the secretary of the man who ran the hotel, and made out formulas for them, and the secretary went with him as far as Berlin. (P.2139). That he told his father he had a German marine artillery cap, and that the idea of being a prisoner of war, if captured, was that of the captain of the U-boat, but that he, Haupt, did not think he would be considered a soldier if he had on an army cap and swimming trunks. That he told his father there was money in the bag. Ha

That he told his father of the meeting on July 6th; that the head boss would be there. That he told his father he would give the zipper bag to the leader of the group, at that time, who would take it to New York and get it changed into American money. That he had heard Kerling say he knew someone in a bank who would change the money.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2144).

That he was well known at the address which he gave at the hotel in Jacksonville, and that persons in that vicinity would know where he was.

(P.2145). That there were two types of uniforms, one with naval buttons and one without. That he did not have naval buttons. That they were given to them in Berlin. (P.2145). That he knew on the submarine that there was to be a meeting at the Gibson Hotel in Cincinnati, and that there was to be no sabotage for about three months.

RECROSS EXAMINATION:

(P.2147).

From 1936 to 1939, he lived at 4444 Western Avenue. His mother then took a trip to Germany and he and his father lived with the Froehling's at 3855 Whipple Street. When his mother returned, they lived at Glencoe, Illinois on Hoffelder Road. (P.2148). That they then moved with friends in Maywood, the Bartler's, and then moved to Fremont Street a few months before he left for Mexico.

QUESTIONS BY THE COMMISSION:

(P.2149). That it was not at first contemplated that they would make a contract, but that they would receive a sum such as 20,000 or 30,000 marks after the war was over, and that it was figured that the hearts and souls of the men who were married could be bought easier by promising them money. That the contract was drawn only because Kappe might be shipped from his present job to the Russian front and get killed.

(P.2149). That the contracts varied but that each stated that the men were V men, and that monthly amounts would be sent either to their relatives, or deposited to their account in a bank. That the contracts were already signed by others whose signatures they were not allowed to see. (P.2150). That he indicated he wanted to work as an optician in Germany. (P.2151). That everything ^{was} against him in Germany, as he had not come there of his own free will, and his relatives were against the Nazi regime. That the contract was signed after the school. That he was not under oath when he signed the contract.

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2152). That at the time he signed the contract, he intended to come to America, but never to commit sabotage. That it was necessary to sign the contract in order to come to America. (P.2153). That his mother's brother was in a concentration camp at the time he was in Germany, and is not out.

EXAMINATION BY THE COMMISSION:

(P.2153). Had he not agreed to come to America to do sabotage, he probably would have been put in a concentration camp. Kappe stated they would pick up his friend Wergin if he, Haupt, did not co-operate.

(P.2154). The questionnaire they all filled out at Saarbrücken gave his name, age, description, amount of money, location of relatives, information as to party membership, citizenship, and purpose in coming to Germany. He gave his citizenship as American.

TESTIMONY OF MRS. AGNES JORDAN, 2038
GULSON AVENUE, CHICAGO, ILLINOIS, A WITNESS FOR THE DEFENSE.

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2157). That witness has lived in Chicago, thirty-five years. (Witness identified Haupt). That she knows the Haupt family. That she was living in Chicago in 1941, and last saw Haupt there in April or May of that year. She met Haupt, who inquired about her son Lawrence, called Larry for short. (P.2159). That he came to her house about three weeks ago to inquire about her son, and said that he had come back from Mexico. (P.2159). That in 1941 he had stated he was going to South America, but not why he was going.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P. 2159). That when Haupt came by her house three weeks ago, he said he had been to the draft board and registered, and did not say why or where else he had been. (At this point, Defense Exhibit E, Report of First Lieutenant Samuel G. Pass, Assistant Intelligence Officer, was read in to the record).

(Summary of report).

(P.2164). I interviewed Herbert Haupt and Wolfgang Wergen in the presence of Mr. Eagen, President of the Simpson Optical Company. Wergen and Haupt are leaving their jobs to go to Mexico, Guatemala and Nicaragua, and other countries in Central and South America. They expect to be in Mexico City only a week or so, and will go to Nicaragua where they have reason to believe they can obtain work.

(P.2165). That there is no precision optical work to be obtained any where they are going, and Mr. Eagen said privately that neither had learned enough of the trade to be of any substantial value to an employer. That he does not consider their loss to be great. That Mr. Eagen stated he could not conceive of its being worth the necessary money for Germany to arrange for the transportation of these young men from Chicago or Central America to Germany. Assuming Mr. Eagen's opinion is competent, it seems there is no possibility of any plan to transport Haupt or Wergen to Germany because of their skill in the trade.

(P.2166). I attempted to induce the boys to remain on the job, but could not do so. Mr. Eagen thinks that this is a case of youthful wanderlust. I see no definite reason to disagree.

(P.2166). Wergen and Haupt were born in Germany. Haupt visited relatives in Germany in 1936. Both say they are American citizens, and have applied for passports to enable them to enter the South American countries. Neither is registered for the draft.

TESTIMONY OF MRS. ANNA EMMA HAUPT, MOTHER
OF HERBERT HAUPT, A WITNESS FOR THE DEFENSE.

(P.2171). (Witness identified Haupt.) That she has lived in her present address a year in May, and moved there from Ainsley Street. (P.2173). That she last saw her son in June, 1941, and then saw him in June, 1942. That in May of 1941, witness was sick in the hospital and Haupt came to her stating that he wanted to go on a vacation, and was planning to see Mexico with his friend. That two days later his girl friend came and told her she was an expectant mother, and Herbert was the father. She was told that Herbert had left for a vacation and that witness had received a card from St. Louis or Oklahoma. (P.2173). That she received a letter from Mexico, and wrote him to come back as his girl friend was in trouble. That she received a card from Mexico, and a cable from Tokyo in August that he was ~~in~~ there. That she never heard from him again until he returned on June 19, 1942.

(P.2173). That she received a telephone call from her brother, and when she arrived at his house, found Haupt. (P.2173). That while Haupt was in Mexico, she received two letters and a birthday telegram, on June 29, 1941. That the letter spoke of the beauty in Mexico, and stated he wanted to get work there. That prior to his leaving he had mentioned Mexico, Guatemala and other places, including Nicaragua. That he had gone down to get a passport, and told that he needed no passport to go to Mexico. That witness subsequently received nine of the ten dollars which he had paid for the passport, back. That when he had returned, he said he had been to Mexico first. On being pressed, he told where else he had been, and that he didn't know any other way to get back to the United States. She knew Haupt had registered for the draft and applied for work at the Simpson Optical Company because he wanted to live his lively routine again. That he asked if he had been called by the F.B.I. as to his not registering. Ha

(P.2176). That he went to Mr. Grunson about getting a job. That witness, her husband and Haupt went out to see Mr. Grunson. Ha

(P.2177). That they moved from the Western Avenue address in May, 1939. That from there they went to 3655 North Whipple Street and from there to Ainslee Street, and from there to her present address. That they lived on Western Avenue two years.

QUESTIONS BY COLONEL ROYALL.

(P.2179). That witness's family consists of herself, her husband, and Herbert.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2179). Witness lived at Whipple Street from May to October, 1939 and then moved to 2234 North Fremont Street. That prior to a year ago last May, Froehling lived at 3655 North Whipple Street, at which time he moved two houses further up. That he lived at the old address three years. (P.2180). That Haupt went there frequently. That Froehling moved before Haupt left.

(P.2180). That Haupt's girl friend is Gerda Stuckmann. That when she came after Haupt left, she said that they had been together a week before; that he had told her he was going on a vacation, although she did not know where he was going, and asked if witness knew where he was.

(P.2181). That Haupt said he came back on a ship, but not what kind, and that she did not hear him tell his husband of it.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2181). That Froehling moved to a new address shortly before Herbert left.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2181). That Froehling moved about a month before Herbie left.

TESTIMONY OF MRS. GERDA MELIND, 1752 ARION AVENUE,
CHICAGO, A WITNESS FOR THE DEFENSE.

(P.2184). (Witness identified Haupt.) That witness is a beauty operator, and that she knew Haupt in 1941 and last saw him in June of that year, having known him for about 3½ years. That she was married to Herbert Melind five years ago prior to the time she knew Haupt.

That when she met Haupt, she was going by her maiden name, Stuckmann.

(P.2186). That she knew Haupt very well at the time he left in 1941. That she did not know for sure that he was going away. Three or four months before he left, he mentioned plans of going to Mexico; that on the last evening she saw him, he said he was not going, and would call her on Wednesday. That she did not receive the call, but received a card from St. Louis next day saying he was on his way to California. That at the time of his leaving, I was expecting a baby, and he told me that he would not desert me. That the card came about three days after he left, saying that he was on his way to California, and would be back soon. That she did not receive any more mail from him, and did not see him until the Tuesday after he returned, when his mother told her he was back. This was a week before the fourth of July.

(P.2187). That when Haupt left, they were engaged, and when he returned, he proposed to her, but she did not accept. That she did agree to have a blood test and bide her time and find out more about where he had been. That he had just said he had been to Mexico. That a blood test was necessary for marriage, under the Illinois law.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2188). Her husband died five months after she was married. That she saw Haupt's mother twice after he left, about a week afterwards. That she asked where he was going, and his mother said she had received a card from St. Louis. She was surprised when he asked her to marry him, and wanted to know where he had been, because she had not heard from him for a year. That they did not discuss money, and he said he could get his old job back. That he had been down to the company, and they said he could work again. That he said he had been to the draft board and registered. That she saw him only that one time. He did not mention any of the other boys he had been with. He said he had returned on a train from the West coast. (P.2191). That he had only been to Mexico.

TESTIMONY OF HERMANN OTTO NEUBAUER, ONE OF THE
ACCUSED, TESTIFYING IN HIS OWN BEHALF.

(The rights of Neubauer as a witness were explained to him, and he stated that he desired to be sworn as a witness.)

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2194). That witness was born in Hamburg, Germany, and lived there twenty-one years before coming to the United States in 1931. That he is now thirty-two years of age, was married on January 10th, 1940, in Miami, Florida. His occupation in the United States was as cook and chef.

(P.2194). That he had made application for citizenship papers in the United States, taking out his first citizenship papers in 1932, in San Francisco; he was on the SS Manhattan of the United States Line when war broke out in 1939 at Havre, France, and had to go back to New York, and thereafter to the Immigration officers where he made application for citizenship, but found that my first papers had expired one day before his last application arrived.

(P.2195). He remained in America until July 11, 1940, and worked at various places in Miami, Florida. (P.2195). That upon arriving in New York from the Manhattan after the declaration of war in 1939, he returned to Germany, where he met Kerling and six others, and

bought a sailboat to return to Germany, but did not succeed in doing so. That they were detained by the immigration authorities and coast guard at various times while on the boat, and finally sold it. That he sailed for Germany on July 11th, 1940, on the SS Exochorda, arriving in Germany on August 3rd, 1940. That he went to Hamburg.

(P.3197). That he was drafted in the German Army on November 14th, 1940, and fought in Poland against Russia. That he was wounded, had a paralysis of speech for two days, and he was removed to a hospital in Krakow, hence to Stuttgart, Germany, where he stayed six months in the hospital. That they wanted to operate on his head to remove the splinters, but it was too near the brain. That he was sent to a sanitarium for his nerves. That he got excited about anything; that the condition is now better than it was, but is still bad.

(P.3198). During the time he was wounded, he was moved about a great deal with great discomfort.

(P.3200). While in a hospital in Vienna in January or February of 1942, he received a letter asking if he would go on a special assignment to a country where he had been before. That the letter was from Kappe. That he had agreed to go. That he was a private in the Army, and had been for seventeen months without receiving any promotion.

(P.3201). He subsequently received orders to report at a school at Ranke Strasse 6, and a railroad ticket.

(P.3201). When he was asked if he would go on duty in a country where ~~he~~ had lived, no information as to the type of duty was given. That he thought it would be as a soldier, and thought maybe he would be going to England as a soldier. That he first found he was to wear civilian clothes when he received his order to go to the school.

(P.3202). He went to Hamburg, and did not think about the order as he was a soldier, and did as he was instructed. On arrival at the school, Kappe told them they were to be trained in different ways of committing sabotage, and that they were going to the United States. That as a soldier, he could do nothing. That he discussed it with no one. (P.3204). That at school, they were instructed how to mix chemicals for making explosives, but were instructed to kill or harm no persons, as they did not want to arouse the feelings of the American people. That they were told to dynamite freight trains but not passenger trains. That they were never given any instructions to get any military information or other information and send it back to Germany. That they learned secret writing to communicate between themselves in this country. That they were never instructed as to methods of communicating with anyone else, outside of this country. That he knew nothing of handkerchiefs or addresses on them, until he heard it at the trial.

(P.3205). That during his stay at the camp, and up to the time he sailed on the submarine, he simply followed orders. When he found he had to come to the United States, he didn't like it. His wife was born in the United States, and her family is there. Also if you have been a soldier, you don't think much of an agent or a saboteur, and that he didn't like it, but could do nothing about it.

(P.3206). He had told Kappe he didn't think it was right to send him to the United States, as he had been picked up by the F.B.I. before, and they would know who he was. That Kappe told him he was not going to be picked up.

(P.3206). That at Lorient they found gold certificates in the money, and were surprised, nervous and disappointed, because the others had been so

(P.2216). That he was acting under orders until the time he thought he could not go through with it. That the orders were that they were to send no sealed letters back to Germany, and that the Captain and Kerling did not object to his sealing his letter.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2217). That he took his first papers in Cincinnati in 1932. That he was a member of the German-American Bund in 1935 and 1936, until the order came out that all Germany citizens had to get out of the Bund. That he was a member of the Deutsch Volksbund in Chicago from 1936 until 1939. That that society was made up of those who had previously been in the Bund. That it was under the direction of the German Consul. (P.2218). That Kappe was at the bund in 1935 and made a speech at Chicago at one of their regular meetings. (P.2219). That Kappe was the editor of the bund newspaper. That the English translation of the name of the newspaper is "Germans Awake", or "Alarm", something like "German Alarm Corps". That he did not meet Kappe that night, but first met him in Germany.

(P.2220) That he became a member of the N.S.D.A.P. in Chicago in 1937. That the reason for joining the Nazi party was that during the time he was in Germany at the time of the Olympic games in 1936, he seemed some improvement. People seemed to feel content, and he thought he might go back to Germany some day.

(P.2221). He made an application for membership to the German counsel, Dr. Tannenberg, who told him to be a good member of the Nazi party, and that he said he would do so. That he purchased Reuckwanderer marks in 1936, to the extent of \$1000.00. That these were deposited in a German Bank, to create a credit in Germany when he returned for him.

(P.2222). That the purpose of buying the boat was to get back to Germany, because he could not get a job in New York, because he was a German. That he had a German passport issued by the German consul in Chicago. (P.2224). That the letter he received from Kappe had no letterhead, and said nothing about the kind of special assignment he was to have. That it said "Soldier Hermann Neubauer, I ask you if you would like to go on a special assignment to a country where you have been before." It was signed by Kappe.

(P.2224). During the course at school, He asked exactly why he had been picked and he told me it was none of my business, but Kappe seemed to know all about him. (P.2225). It was understood that he should first get accustomed to living conditions in the United States. That he was not told to register again, nor were the others. It was left up to them to do whatever they saw fit, with reference to getting a job. That he did not know whether the leaders were to report right to Germany.

(P.2226). That they were to communicate among themselves, using secret ink and designate a meeting place. That a V-man is in civilian clothes, and trusted on a secret mission. (P.2227). That they were instructed to say nothing if they were arrested. That a history was prepared as to what they had been doing. That his story was that he was born in Walsten, Pennsylvania, which name was given to him by George Dasch, because he knew that the town did not exist any more. That he was to say he was an American, and his mother went to Lithuania, where she and his father had been born, in 1914, and did not return because of the war. That he was to use the name "Henry Nicholas", and that he did use that name in the Seminole Hotel in Jacksonville, the LaSalle Hotel, the Sherman Hotel and the Sheridan Plaza in Chicago. That he gave an address on LaFayette Avenue, Brooklyn, New York at the hotel, but did not know whether such an address existed. That he made up the

LaFayette address in Germany before the registration cards were filled out by Dasch. That the gold certificates were bad money (P.2229), because they might have been traced, and he might have been picked up; that it made him nervous because they had not thought of his safety. N

(P.2230). Referring to Burger's statement that witness was after money, Kappe told him he would get \$300.00 every month in a bank in Berlin, but when he signed the contract, it only stated he would get \$300.00. That he had seen other occasions when he had ^{been} promised things but not given them; that he had been told by Kappe that he would be promoted to a Corporal, but had not been so promoted.

(P.2233). That in his letter to his wife, he told her that American or German citizens were being exchanged, and that she should try the same thing. That he did not mention he would be in the United States.

(P.2234). When he was landed, he was afraid of almost everything, and thought he was being watched. That on the boat, after he had shown the letter to Kerling, Kerling said something like "Maybe we both going to have our wife again." That they did not discuss what they were going to do, and did talk about the realization that they couldn't go through with it, and if they could not, they would go to Mexico.

(P.2235). That after he and Kerling had noticed the way everything was watched at railroad stations, factories, etc., that they decided on the train they would not have a chance to go through with it. It was decided that four members of the group would decide what to do in Chicago on July 6th. (P.2236). That it was also decided that if they did not have a chance to move to the other countries, they were going to give themselves up to the F.B.I. That this was his suggestion. That Kerling said they would have to wait until they all agreed on it. That if they could not get out of the country, it was contemplated that all report to the F.B.I. together. (P.2237). That they did not see any way to get the explosives again. (P.2238). That after arriving in Chicago, he was nervous and gave his money belt to Jaques. (P.2239). That he told Jaques that he had come from Germany, and that the money was given to him in Germany and he would like for Jaques to keep it. That he told them Kerling had come over with him. That he told Jaques he had come over on a submarine.

(P.2241). That he did not go to the F.B.I. on arrival, because at that time, he and Kerling had not decided what to do. That he jumped ship (P.2241), in the United States in 1931. That he was given \$50.00 by the German Consal in 1940, to pay part of his transportation to Germany. That he went to the German Consul's office in Lisbon, and during his stay there, the German Consul paid for his room and meals. That the same thing was done in Rome. That he was given a letter for which he obtained a second-class ticket for the Brenner Pass.

(P.2245). That with the exception of statements about the money belt, and two or three other things at that time, the statement was otherwise true.

(P.2245). That the statement "I admit that I came to the United States with this group for the purpose of committing acts of sabotage" is not true. That he made this statement to the F. B. I., and also "and might have done so if the opportunity arose.", which is also not true.

REINDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2246). That he joined the Nazi party in 1937, and after he found difficulty in getting work here, he sought to go to Germany, and finally did so. That he was drafted in the army, and obeyed orders. That he first decided on the submarine that he could not go through with this plan, and would not do so. (P.2247). That he first disclosed this to Kerling on the train because he was afraid to do so on the U-Boat. That he did nothing about abandoning the plan, waiting to see all of his group. That he was not to communicate any military information between the group, or any facts about anything, but to use it, merely, as a means of seeing each other. n

TESTIMONY OF WERNER EDWARD THIEL, ONE OF THE ACCUSED, TESTIFYING IN HIS OWN BEHALF.

(The rights of the accused were explained to him, and he stated he wished to be sworn as a witness).

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2250). That he was born in Essen, Germany on March 29, 1907, of German parents, and is a German citizen. That he came to the United States in 1927, as a passenger on the S. S. Cleveland, entering this country lawfully, going to Detroit. That they lived in Detroit for three and a half years, then lived in New York, Hammond, Indiana, Los Angeles, Philadelphia and Fort Myers, and the last few years, lived in New York again. He was in America fourteen years, as a tool and die maker. That he was educated in public school, and served his apprenticeship, and went to night school.

(P.2251). That he was a member of the Friends of New Germany from 1933 to 1936, when he withdrew as he was not an American citizen.

(P.2252). That in 1939, he joined the Nazi party and continued his membership in Germany, although he never took part in any activities.

(P.2253). That he went back to Germany in 1941, on the Tatuta Maru by way of San Francisco, Yokohama. That he met George Pasch on the boat; that none of his friends went with him.

(P.2253). That the German consulate paid his fare, for which he had to sign papers that he would return the money. That he has never paid any of the money back. That in February, he received a letter stating it was not necessary to repay the money. (P.2253). That he wanted to go home in 1936, but lost his money. That in 1940, he heard that the Consulate would pay his way, and he wanted to go back to see his parents and relatives.

(P.2254). That upon arriving in Germany, he first visited his relatives and then went to Berlin where he obtained work and worked there until the first of April, 1942. That one of his brothers had lost his eye in the war, and another had been killed, he being informed of this in the middle of March. As a result of this, he did not have a clear mind for quite a while. That the brother who was killed was 31 years, and was very close to him. That he heard about the school about the same time that he learned of his brother's death, before he was officially notified, although he felt at that time that his brother was dead, as letters addressed to his brother had been returned undelivered.

(P.2256). That at a meeting in Berlin, he had met George Dasch and Walter Kappe, whom he had known in Chicago in 1935, when he was a guest speaker of the Friends of New Germany. That on meeting Kappe, he recalled his previous meeting, and renewed his acquaintance with Dasch, and suggested that they meet again. That at this meeting, Dasch asked if he wanted to do something to help the fatherland, and go back to the United States. That he did not make up his mind at this time, but in the next week, he received a letter from Kappe, requesting him to come to 6 Ranke Street, and there Kappe "talked about how nice it is for us fellows who know the United States, to go back to the United States and do something for the Fatherland, and I did not know what it was, but I agreed to do it." (P.2257). That they did not say the purpose of the school, and he thought it had reference to propaganda or something of the sort.

(P.2257). That he first learned the purpose of the school after he arrived there. That he was instructed in making explosives out of chemicals for sabotage purposes, although they were instructed not to kill anybody. That they were never instructed to do any spying or getting any military information. (P.2258). That they studied secret writing to communicate among themselves as to where they would meet. That he knew nothing about handkerchiefs with addresses on them. That he knew nothing of any instructions given to the leader of the group as to communication with anybody. (P.2259). That after regaining his senses while in the school, he didn't like the idea of going back to the United States and doing sabotage. That this was after he got over the shock of his brother's death. That this was the second week of the school, and that he did not communicate it to anyone else, because he did not dare to do so. That Kerling was the leader of his group, and he followed his instructions. That he followed the instructions of Kappe while he was in school.

(P.2260). That before leaving, they found gold certificates in the money, and thought it would be awful if they used gold certificates as they might be apprehended.

(P.2260). That he was supposed to be William Thomas, born in Chicago, raised in Switzerland and came back to this country in 1927, and that from that point on, his story was to be his regular life's story. That Kappe told him to make up a story, and he made it up himself. He would always hope that something would come up to prevent him from going back to the United States, but (P.2261) after he signed the contract he thought he simply had to go on.

(P.2261). That on the submarine, he didn't like the idea, and the nearer he got to the United States, the more excited he got. (P.2261). That he did not discuss the matter on the submarine, but in New York Kerling showed me a line in the Mirror, a newspaper, which stated that the F.B.I. were looking for four men from a submarine on the Florida coast. Kerling said "Well, I think we had better forget the whole thing." That was on Tuesday morning, after we landed. That on leaving Florida he went to Cincinnati, where he met Kerling. They had been instructed (P.2262) to wait two or three months to get used to the country before doing anything. That neither he nor any other member of the group had done anything toward sabotage after he landed, except to bury the explosives, and had not discussed any plans.

(P.2263). That on the day he saw the item in the paper, he stayed close to the hotel. He was arrested at 11 or 11:30 at night and was not allowed to sleep. That Mr. Donegan asked me a question and then when he did not answer, Mr. Donegan pulled his hair and slapped his face. (P.2265). He did not tell the doctor about this because he thought it was no use.

(P.2267). That he did not tell the whole story at first because he thought he was the first to be arrested, and did not want to tell

the whole story, because it would be printed in the paper, and would be known in Germany if he was telling about the sabotage plan.

CROSS-EXAMINATION.

(P.2267). That Donegan slapped him a couple of times, and pulled his hair once. That he told Mr. Rice he had been mistreated, but not that he had been slapped or his hair pulled.

(P.2269). He was questioned from the time of his apprehension until 9 o'clock, but was allowed time-out for meals. That he was questioned all day, but the questioning was interrupted when he had his meals.

(2269). That he did not put everything in his statement that he told in the testimony. That he said in his statement he didn't tell Tony Cramer that he didn't come over on the submarine, because he didn't want to bring him into the trouble.

(P.2270). That he did tell Tony Cramer he had come over on a submarine, and that he went through a course in Germany before he came over, but did not tell him what kind of course. That he gave Cramer the money belt, telling him that there was money in it in the approximate sum of \$4,000.00, and asked him to keep it until he (witness), asked for it back again. J.

(P.2271). That he joined the Nazi party in 1939. That he was not quite sure whether he wanted to stay in the United States or go back to Germany, but thought it could not harm him if he were a member of the Nazi party. That he made his application to the German Consul and signed a pledge that he would be loyal to the party and Hitler. That he did not sign the pledge, and took it orally with his hand up, and said that he had to repeat it word for word. J.

(P.2272). He took out his first papers in 1927, but did not follow them up.

(P.2272). That he signed a contract in Germany with reference to the welfare of his family, in case he got hurt, or something, and that he did not know with whom the contract was. That he was not allowed to see the other signatures.

(P.2273). That he first saw Kappe at a meeting of the Friends of New Germany, in 1934 or 1935. That he did not talk with him in Chicago. That Dasch was not there at that meeting. That he went to a meeting of the bund in 1938 at Madison Square Garden, and that was the only time he attended a bund meeting after 1935.

(P.2274). That Dasch asked him in a saloon if he wanted to do something for the Fatherland, and go back to the United States. It was after war had been declared with America. He didn't think much of it again until he received a letter from Kappe. (P.2275). That he had met Kappe at a social meeting of the Ausland group in Berlin, where he went up to Kappe and mentioned having seen him in America. That Kappe did not remember him. He invited him to Kappe's table. Dasch was sitting there too, and they talked over general things about old times in America. That neither Kappe or Dasch at that time talked about doing something for the Fatherland. That he saw Kappe a week later.

(P.2276). That as a result of that evening, Dasch asked Kappe if he wanted to go back to the United States. That Dasch seemed to be very close to Kappe.

(P.2276). That after witness had agreed to go to the United States, Kappe told him he would have to go to school, but he thought maybe it meant going to the United States and doing some kind of propaganda, or something. That he never dreamed of sabotage. That he agreed to go to the United States although he did not know what the purpose was. 2

(P.2277). "he talked how nice it was some of us fellows could do something for Germany over there." That he heard of his brother's death a few days later, but at that time his letters had come back, already with a cross on, and at that time he was very much afraid his brother was dead, and only kept thinking about his brothers. He was not quite clear and sure about himself at that time. J

(P.2278). That he kept on thinking about it for weeks and weeks, but after a couple of weeks, knew exactly what was what, but had already signed a contract and couldn't get out. (P.2279). "Well, I wouldn't say exactly I didn't know what I was doing. I wouldn't say that. But I was quite--I was dazed; I wasn't sure of myself at all."

(P.2279). That the uniforms issued to them were regular war cloth, like soldiers wear when they work. That they were told to wear them in order to get on the submarine so that no one would feel suspicious about civilians going on a submarine, and later they were told to wear them so that they would be treated as prisoners of war if they were captured while landing.

(P.2279). That they were instructed to blow up aluminum plants, or rather to get production or cripple production. That they said it could be done without hurting anybody. That he was never sure he really wanted to do any sabotage work.

(P.2281). That he meant Tony Cramer on the night of June 23rd, 1942. (P.2281). That he was nervous when he saw the gold certificates with the other money, because he thought that might lead to his arrest. 2

(P.2280). Kerling had shown him a line in The Mirror, saying that some men who had been saboteurs were arrested. That he did not tell the F.B.I. that. That he did not want to tell them exactly that he didn't want to go ahead with the sabotage work because he did not want it to leak out. That he did not, before being apprehended, make a decision to go to the F.B.I. and report the whole thing.

(P.2282). That while at the school the students did not talk over the sabotage plans together, but simply took instructions from Kappe and Barth.

(P.2283). That he organized a local group of the Friends of New Germany in Hammond, Indiana, in 1934, and was leader of that group. 2

(P.2283). That the statement in his statement to the F.B.I., he went to Germany to aid the war effort is not correct. That he figured if he went to Germany he could not come back and would have to work in a German factory and that such work would be aiding Germany in its war effort. (P.2284). That he was desirous of helping Germany by working in a German factory. 2

(P.2284). That Helmut Leiner is a friend of Kerlings, whom witness met in 1940. That when they came back to New York, Kerling tried to get in touch with Leiner. They saw Leiner and talked with him. (P.2285). That witness did not recall Kerling saying anything to Leiner about their trip. That Kerling did not want Leiner's father to see him because they knew he had been back to Germany in 1940.

(P.2286). That he asked Leiner to go to Cramer's address because "it is a German neighborhood there, and in Berlin we always were told to stay away from all Germans--we shouldn't have any connection at all with German people over here." That he was thus obeying orders received in Berlin in a way.

(P.2287). That he picked the name William Thomas in Berlin, and used that name in America to register in hotels. That he was not in the German army at any time, and was not assigned a number in the German Army while at the school.

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2289) That he never counted the money in the money belt, but believed it to be around \$4500.00 as the F.B.I. agents said most of the other belts contained that much money. That he did not know much about the details of the plan, but was following orders.

(P.2289). That in the Fund he organized, there were twenty or thirty members; that was the only time he was the assistant leader of anything. He was only an ordinary workman in the plant where he worked. (P.2290). That he did not know what was in the contract the other men signed, and didn't know whether they were all like. That he had never used the word "instigation", and that somebody else must have put it in his F.B.I. statement.

RECROSS EXAMINATION:

(P.2292). That his contract referred to him as a V-man, or a man of trust.

EXAMINATION BY THE COMMISSION:

(P.2293). That he does not know what would have happened had he told Kappeler he had changed his mind and would not carry out the plan, but supposed they would have interned him for disobeying orders.

TESTIMONY OF HERBERT HAUPT IN WITNESS'S

OWN BEHALF, RECALLED:

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2297). That he lived at 4444 Western Avenue from 1936 to 1939. That his mother left for Europe, and he and his father stayed at his Uncle Walter's. They then lived at Glencoe, and moved to Maywood. That they moved to the apartment on Vermont Street, one month before he left. That they had moved to Ainsley Street previous to the last move, and had lived there for about six months, but that Western Avenue was the last address he lived for a considerable period of time.

TESTIMONY OF WERNER EDWARD THIEL.

IN WITNESS'S OWN BEHALF, RECALLED:

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P. 2299). That he met Dasch on the way to Japan on a boat. That there were 42 or 45 Germans on the boat. That the Germans had some informal meetings and sang German songs; that some of the others were against Dasch because he did not take part in the singing, and they did not trust him. Some thought he was an F.B.I. agent, and he was always in arguments with some of the others.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2300). They argued about politics, ways in Germany, etc.

(P.2301). That Dasch talked about the way people in conquered territories were treated. That he was not a Communist, in witness's opinion.

(P.2301). TESTIMONY OF EDWARD JOHN KERLING, ONE OF
THE ACCUSED, TESTIFYING IN HIS OWN
BEHALF.

(The rights of the accused were explained to him and he stated he wished to be sworn in as a witness and testify in his own behalf).

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2302). That he is 33 years old, and was born at Weisbaden, Siebrich.

(P.2303). That he came to America in 1939, and stayed until June or July of 1940. That he married a German girl by the name of Maria Eichart in 1931. That both he and his wife and always have been German citizens.

(P.2303). That on the night he was apprehended, around 10 o'clock, he was taken into another room about two or three o'clock in the morning. That at first he didn't give them the right answers, and they started to argue with him, and Donegan got mad. That he was so tired and shocked he couldn't keep his eyes open. That Donegan got mad and pulled his hair, and drew him down and tipped him over on his lap and took his hand and slapped his face. That he told the doctor later that Donegan hit him in the face, or something to that effect.

(P.2304). That afterwards, Donegan took him out and asked "Did I hit you?" in a tone that made witness think that if he said yes he would get a good beating. In order to get out of this, he said no, and so told the doctor.

(P.2304). That he was kept up all night that night, and about 9 or 10 o'clock the next morning, had about a half hour's sleep.

(P.2305). That the first information he gave was partly correct and partly incorrect. That the reason for the incorrect information was that he didn't want Thiel to think he had given it out. The next morning he knew Thiel had been questioned and was through, and he told them he would go to Florida and show them the boxes.

(P.2305). That he went to Florida with the F.B.I. agents, where they walked around on the beach trying to find the boxes. That he drank some water there which made him ill.

(P.2306). After he returned from Florida, he gave another statement.

(P.2307). That he didn't want to sign anything on the first night, and asked for a lawyer, but was not allowed to have one, and refused to sign any papers. That after he came back from Florida, he did sign various papers.

(P.2307). That they buried the boxes at night next to three tree stumps standing on a little hill, and palms all around, and measured the distance by walking to Ponte Vedra. That there was also a wire fence going out to a street. That when he came down with the F.B.I. agents, they parked right where it was, but he didn't recognize it for some time, and walked up and down.

(P.2308). That the wording and phrasing of the statements of

June 28 and July 3rd was a condensation of questioning which took place, partly on the way to Florida, and partly on the way back; there are some errors in it, and some of it is left out. That he could not have given Basch the address of his wife because he did not know where she was.

(P.2309). That after coming to America in 1939, he returned to Germany in 1933 and 1936 for short visits. That he became a member of the Nazi party in 1938, and belongs to the Old Guard which is composed of the first 100,000 of the party membership. That his number was approximately 70,000.

(P.2310). That he was never a member of any Bund in this country.

(P.2310). That he had some misunderstanding with his wife before he left America, but it was cleared up when he arranged for her to come to Germany. She did not want to do this, and suggested that he get a divorce and marry Hedy Engemann. That before he left, he became friendly with his wife, but was advised later, through consuls that they had offered her passage but she wouldn't go to Germany.

(P.2311). He and his wife worked together as domestics in this country.

(P.2311). That when war broke out in Europe he tried to get home on a ship, but was unable to do so, so he bought a boat with Hermann Neubauer and a few others. That the statements of Neubauer about the boat episode were correct except that the fingerprinting by the F.B.I. was voluntary on the part of all persons.

(P.2312). That he lost his job when war broke out, and also felt it wouldn't look any too good for him to be in a safe country when there was a war going on, so he tried to get home. That Mr. Armstrong, his employer, at that time advised him to go home.

(P.2313). That he never worked for anyone who was making supplies for the army.

(P.2313). That he went to Germany through Italy. That there was an opening for him in the Army in France. That he did not get into the Army, but was working for the Army at the listening post on the French Coast, in a civilian capacity, but classed as a lieutenant.

(P.2314). That after working there for about three months, he went back to Berlin and received a position as referent in the Propaganda Ministry. That his work consisted of managing stage shows, etc.

(P.2314). That in March, Kappe came to his office. He had never seen Kappe but knew who he was. He talked about two hours, first about his work. That there was one group in the Propaganda Ministry that had great influence and ridiculed everything that came up in the United States. That witness and a few others warned them and tried to get some other fellows in there who knew the States better than they did, in order to bring that under a better basis. As a result of this, witness was called down for being pro-American.

(P.2316). Kappe then wanted to know if witness wanted to go back to American, and he answered in the affirmative. That Kappe seemed quite informed about him. K

(P.2317). That one day later on, Kappe came and asked if he wanted to go on a military mission to America, and witness said "yes". This was some time in March. That Kappe said it was some thing like the British were doing, you get on and then get off again; a regular military mission. K

(P.2317). "I couldn't say 'No' then, because I was sitting in a position if I said 'No' he could go and say, 'Well, he is a coward.'"

(P.2318). Witness could not say "no" to Kappe's proposition, because it would make him look like a coward, staying in a place where he could earn money, while others were fighting. That he wanted to do his duty as a German. That witness assumed that the work was to be in the nature of a "commando" raid. (P.2319). That Kappe later told him that he had to go to a school, whereupon witness wasn't any too anxious about the matter.

(P.2320). That he tried to get out of going to school by being called up by the regular army, but Kappe had that recalled, and they sent an order to his office that they let him go. That if he had said "no", it would have been treason.

(P.2320). That Euber and Neubauer had been in the army, Neubauer being a private. (P.2321). That around the middle of the course, he told Kappe that the school was useless because none of the men talked good English, and some were mentally unfit. That to this, Kappe agreed to take Euber and one other person out, and stated that the others were all right.

(P.2321). That the question of persons being harmed came up several times, to which all agreed that it would be harmful to the group if anyone were hurt.

(P.2322). That they received instructions in Jujitsu for their own pleasure, but not for harming others.

(P.2323). That they were not instructed to obtain any military information, but were instructed to the contrary, as they had someone else to do that.

(P.2323). That Kappe tried to give them a radio and train someone to use it, but that plan was abandoned. That an address in Portugal was given them by Kappe. That this address was to be used in case witness changed his address in America, in which he was to inform Kappe, through Portugal. That he was to communicate nothing else through Portugal, and that he and Dasch were the only ones who were given the Portugal address. That he and Dasch were the only ones given matches for secret writing, to Portugal.

(P.2325). That the writing in secret ink was to be confined to the group themselves.

(P.2326). That witness did not think that Burger would go through with the plan. That he did not find until he got to school that he would not wear a uniform, or shortly before that.

(P.2326). That in Lorient there was a row over the gold certificates and witness told Kappe he did not want to risk going through with the plan. Kappe told him he could not get out then. K

(P.2327). That he was ordered to go through with the plan. That he wanted to come to America because his wife was sick, and needed an operation, and did not have any money; and he was sure it would not succeed, first because Dasch was not any too sure, and secondly, because Burger was quite sure he would not go through and witness knew Burger only wanted a reason to get out; third, that none of them talked English well enough to go around as an American. That he knew the mission was a dangerous one, and was quite sure, and hoped he would find another way out. That he could have come here and tried to hide for a few weeks or months and then slip into Mexico and get out through Chile or Argentina.

(P.2328). That he knew the punishment given to Englishman caught not in uniform in Germany or Occupied France, and that such persons were not put to death.

(P.2329). That they knew on the submarine that the other group would get caught, because Dasch and Burger were just opposite characters from the other two. That he mentioned to the others that he hoped the first group would not trip them off. K

(P.2329). He heard that Mexico had entered the War, on the submarine, and that gas rationing was in effect, and remarked that that development left them out.

(P.2330). That they had intended using an automobile, but it would be impossible for them to register with gas. That Haupt was in a rush to get home to Chicago.

(P.2330). That he knew Neubauer had some doubts. That he had not dared talk to Neubauer freely on the submarine, but that in Florida, Neubauer said it was impossible. That general nervousness and observation of plants made them feel that it was impossible and hopeless.

(P.2331). That he had planned to go to Chicago on July 6th, and told Neubauer to feel out Haupt and they would discuss what to do at the meeting. That they had not planned any sabotage before that time, as it had been given up, and he hoped that Neubauer would convince Haupt that the best thing to do was to get out. That he was not sure about Thiel, but thought Thiel would do as witness instructed him to do. That an indefinite time of from three to six months was set before they were to begin sabotage. That at no time had he made any definite plans for any definite sabotage.

(P.2332). That a friend told him where Hedy Engermann was, and he asked her to find him an apartment. That he wanted her to go to Chicago with him, but she could not go.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2333). That agent Donegan slapped him in the presence of Drayton. (P.2335). That he did not remonstrate, but later told the doctor that an Agent had punched him. (P.2337). That Donegan punched him because he would not give an answer to Donegan's question. (P.2337). That he signed two statements. That he looked over the statement of June 28th, but not carefully, and he signed it because he was quite weak and sick, and didn't look what he signed. That he knew about what it was, but did not know for what purpose it was taken nor that it would be used against him. (ON detail questioning, witness stated that he made corrections on numerous occasions).

(P.2340). That some things were missing from the statement. That the statement that he had not been a party member was untrue. (P.2341). That he signed the second statement on June 30th, and read it more carefully, because it was pointed out to him that it would be used in court. That although the first statement says "I make the same freely and voluntarily knowing that it can be used against me if necessary." It didn't say anything about the court. (P.2342). That the second statement states "I know that it may be used subsequently in a court of law." That he had an idea that the first statement would be used for the newspaper. K

(P.2343). That he was a Nazi party member from 1928 until the present time. That he is a loyal German. That at the time he became a member in 1928, his parents had been thrown out of occupied territories, losing everything they had. At this time he was afraid of the Communists, and the Nazi party was only one of 42 different parties. (P.2345). That he had been a member of the party for a few months, when he left. That he kept being a member by having friends paying his dues, which kept on until K

1933. That he paid his dues through the German Consulate. That he was only in Germany for a few weeks--few months, until 1940, and came back in August, 1941. That he had not gone into party politics but knew how the thing worked.

(P.2346). That he was not in favor with the Gestapo, and knew of newer members who were against him. (P.2346) That he had nothing to do with the party, no position in it, and no real connection with it.

(P.2348). "I can say I have tried to be a loyal Party member till I got into this thing, but when they used me --used their power they held over me through that, I doubt my loyalty."

(P.2348). That he went to Germany several times before the last trip, and did not wear the uniform in Germany on these trips. That the first job he got on his last trip was in a listening post in Beauville, France, a few days after he landed. That he went over on the German passport and his job was arranged through the foreign office. He called on the party office as it was their duty to help him get a job. (P.2350) That he tried to get a job to help himself as he had no money and had to find work. That he left America on his employer's advice. (P.2350). He would not say he had a commission in the Army, but was classed as such for pay purposes, and that his job was operated as a branch of the Army and Air Corps.

(P.2351). That he did not know whether the paper he had signed at the school stated that he was a soldier or V-man. (P.2351). That he belonged to the labor front in Germany, having joined it in 1936-1937.

(P.2352). That he met Kappe in March of this year, never having seen him before. That he had heard of Kappe. That Kappe seemed to know a good deal about him. That he was making 450 to 500 marks at his listening post job. (P.2353). That he did not sign a contract like the others, because he was not in the army; that he was working for the propaganda ministry and when called up for military service any place in the Army they keep up paying wages, but there was a provision made that his wife would get a certain amount of money, about 300 marks, if his office does not pay.

(P.2355). Kappe asked if he wanted to go back to America some day, and witness answered yes. That later Kappe asked if he would like to go on a military mission in the United States like the British do in France, and that witness said yes. That he hoped it was just conversation, and was lying to Kappe. That the listening post where he worked belonged to Richthofen of the Air Corps. That the listening post was given up, and he went to Berlin and was in the Propaganda Ministry. (P.2356). That when Kappe's plan got to a stage where he thought he had better get out, he talked to Schmidtdecker, his superior in the Propaganda Ministry about getting out.

(P.2357). That he told his superior that he was not sure what kind of a mission it was, but didn't think much of it. That his superior stated he would try and get him a regular army requisition. That the order came to report to the Air Corps again; when he informed Kappe of this, Kappe said he would stop it.

(P.2358). That Kappe did stop it. That he made no other attempt to get out until he got to school, and he told them he didn't think very much about the whole thing. That he told Scotty he didn't think much of Dasch.

(P.2359). That Kappe had a letter about Burger. Kappe told witness he had checked on Burger and thought he was all right.

(P.2360.) He had not asked whether Kappe had checked up on the others. (P.2361). That of Zuber, he asked how Kappe could send a man who could not talk English and has been held on Ellis Island.

(P.2362). That they were not told specifically to blow up Hell Gate Bridge; that they were told to keep their hands off bridges.

(P.2364). That they were instructed to go after railroads, blowing up freight train tracks, putting abrasives into hot boxes and slow down freight delivery. That they were instructed to do this without hurting anyone.

(P.2365). That he put the secret writing on his handkerchief, with the help of a chemist who mixed a fluid, and the address given by Kappe. That he had previously given Kappe the name of a friend of his, but made no suggestion about the name on the handkerchief. That he had the address of Dasch so that if he lost Dasch he could catch up with him again at that address. That the other name was one to whom they could go if they needed help, but that they were warned not to. That that person was an agent over here.

(P.2366). That the Lisbon address was one through which they could get in touch with Kappe, in event of a change of address. That Kappe first advised him to get someone on the radio, but they were against it, and then later Kappe gave them the Lisbon address, and said "Maybe you will want to communicate with us."

(P.2367). That the handkerchief was given to them at the end of their vacation.

(P.2367). That the train from Paris to Lorient was mixed between civilians and soldiers, but that there were no soldiers in their compartment.

(P.2368). That he gave Haupt part of the money because he had too much on hand, and he was not sure of Haupt, and that he would rather have Haupt with money than without. That he was afraid that if Haupt had no money, he would try to give Kerling up and get some money. He did not want to be given up then. That he had not made up his mind what he was going to do at that time. K

(P.2368). That when they buried the boxes, they did so quickly and got away.

(P.2369). He had a cap on and a bathing trunk and a coat when he landed. That the cap was a military cap, like the one that had been introduced in evidence. He thought he had thrown his back in the boat, but later found it buried with the others. That he wore mostly bathing trunks on the submarine, but otherwise, he wore old pants. That he wore the fatigue clothes going to the boat in Lorient, and getting off. That the other boys wore the same kind of clothing that they obtained in Berlin from the Army or Marine.

(P.2370). That he registered at the Commodore Hotel in New York, under the name of Edward Kelly, which was the name advised by Dasch as a part of the plan. That he used the same name at the Seminole Hotel in Jacksonville. That Neubauer was with him when he registered at the Commodore Hotel, but did not register. That it was Thiel who was with him in New York, who registered under the name Thomas, being the name given him in Germany by Kappe and Dasch. 12

(P.2371). That he met Tony Cramer, a friend of Thiel's on June 23rd. (P.2372). That he saw Hedy Engermann Monday noon for a few minutes. He did not come back to get a divorce, but wanted to help his wife, who had

had an operation and was sick. His wife had little money at the time he left to go to Germany.

(P.2372). That Krepper was a name given to him by Kappe to get in touch with him if he needed help. That he never saw Krepper.

(P.2373). That he tried to see Lema, who was a friend of mine, but did not do so.

(P.2373). It was obvious that Burger was not going through with the plan. That he had been in a concentration camp and did not appear over there to care much for the whole thing. That he had the feeling from the beginning of the school that Burger would not go through with it. That in Paris, Burger had declared how careless the others were.

(P.2374). Anyone who knows Dasch would have his doubts of him. He acted disinterestedly, talked of getting over there and seeing. That Kappe said Dasch was all right.

(P.2375). That he mentioned the possibility of coming back through Mexico, to Neubauer on the submarine. That they heard there was a gas shortage and had to register for gas. It was mentioned both on the East coast, and through the entire country. K

(P.2376). That they were instructed to enlist recruits, although they were given no names.

(P.2376). That when arrested, he was waiting for his wife. That he was not looking for a hideout, where explosives could be brought, but was looking for a place where he could stay. He never intended getting the explosives from Florida, and made no plans to that effect. (P.2377). That after reading that the F.B.I. were looking for Germans coming off a submarine in Florida, he told Thiel he would have to leave the boxes. That he had previously decided not to go back anymore, and thought he might go and see if they were buried so they could be left, but had not made any plans to that effect. That he had not talked to any girl about going down to get them, but had mentioned to Hedy Engermann if she would go on a trip with him. He did not say anything about the explosives to Hedy Engermann, and did not tell her the reason for his being here. K

(P.2378). That he did not plan to marry her after he divorced his wife, because he was not going to divorce his wife, although his wife wanted him to marry Hedy Engermann.

(P.2378). That Exhibit P-261 is a photographic copy of his registration at the Commodore Hotel, and showed an address in Hammond, Indiana, which he had just made up. That Exhibit P-262 is a photograph of his registration at the Hotel Seminole, which shows an address at Astoria, N.Y., which is also false. (P.2380). That this was the address shown on his registration card Dasch gave him. K

(P.2380). That he had given up the plan when he landed in Florida. That his statement of June 28th is not correct, and that points are left out and points phrased not exactly the way he told the F.B.I.

(P.2381). That the statement on page 9 of his statement of June 28th, to the effect that at the time of landing he intended to follow instructions, but in the course of his stay came to the conclusion that his orders were made impossible to fulfil as the means of transportation were too insecure, was not a correct statement.

(P.2383). That he did not wear the Nazi party uniform on any of his trips to Germany prior to the last one.

(P.2384). When Kappe gave him the address of Froehling in Chicago, he first thought the address was given by Haupt, now thinks it was given by Kappe. (P.2385). That he looked in the telephone book for Krepper while passing through Newark, but had no intention of seeing him. He had an idea that this might be the Protestant minister who was reported in the newspaper to have been arrested. K+Ha
12

(P.2386) That he had not at that time developed the handkerchief to find the exact address, and didn't know where it was. That Kappe had told him he had not heard from Krepper for a long time. (P.2387). He saw Hedy Engermann in Central Park on Monday afternoon. He tried first to make her believe he came from Mexico, and then she mentioned he came on a submarine, to which he answered neither yes or no. That he did not mention to her that Hermann Neubauer was in the United States; she just guessed he came on the submarine, and he did not deny it. (P.2388). He asked her if she wanted to come with him to Cincinnati and Chicago, and how she would like to go to Florida.

(P.2389). That he knows a girl named Miriam Adams, having met her in 1936. She was a friend of his to whom she wrote some time. That Exhibit P-263 is a letter he wrote to Miss Adams (Miriam Adams), dated December 22, 1940. (P.2393). That the letter was written in Berlin with a return address of Wiesbaden, on December 22, 1940. That at time, he tried to be a loyal Nazi.

(P.2395). That Exhibit P-264 is a letter written by witness to Miriam Adams. (P.2399). The letter is dated November 25th, 1941, from Berlin, carrying a return address of Day, Bamberger Street 45. Mrs. Day is an American woman living over there, with whom he boarded. (P.2401). That he lived with her for about 6 months, and when war broke out, and she had to register, he helped her out by vouching for her and supporting her with money.

(P.2401). That Exhibit P-265 is another letter written by him to Miriam Adams on June 4th, 1940, from Washington, D. C. (P.2402). That this was on his return from Florida, while going through Washington. That this was after he had sold his boat.

(P.2405). An excerpt read by the Attorney General from a letter giving a report as to what had occurred in reference to his investigation by the F.B.I. written by him in 1939, to Dr. Draeger. (P.2407) He thought the German Consul should know about the matter therein contained.

(P.2408). That he paid his party dues at the consulate office.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2412). That in addition to helping Mrs. Day, who was an American citizen, he also vouched for another man who had gone on the boat with him when he left in 1936. That man was held by the Gestapo.

(P.2413). That at the time of writing the two letters to Miriam Adams from Berlin, he was working for the Propaganda Ministry, and they were written before America entered the war.

(P.2413). That each man signed some papers at the school individually, and he does not know what any body else signed.

(P.2413). That he did not wear a uniform on visits to Germany in 1933 and 1936, although he did wear one in 1938 when he became a member of the Party. That while working for the Propaganda Ministry, he wore a uniform of that office. That on the submarine he wore fatigue clothes, a work outfit for the navy.

(P.2413). That he learned of his wife's illness from Mrs Neubauer last spring or summer. (P.2414). That while working for the Propaganda Ministry, he received a salary of about 600 marks a month.

(P.2414). That he was not sure of Haupt, and did not want him to give them up before he could talk to him. K

EXAMINATION BY THE COMMISSION:

(P.2416). That he tried out of coming to the United States on this mission as he preferred to be a soldier of Germany in the official army. That he did not consider it his duty to come to America. That he did not state to Kappe that he wanted to come, but could not very well refuse. He would have then been in difficulties. That the matter did not look so serious then.

(P.2417). That he still insists that he is a loyal German. K

(P.2417). That he had noticed a few stumps around the spot where he buried the money. That these stumps were mentioned, one of the party saying "There are three nice palm trees; we will remember it by them."

(P.2418). That prior to coming to the United States, he had not served in the German Army. That he had not served in the German Army, but worked for the German Army as a civilian, ranking as a lieutenant, and paid accordingly, and treated accordingly. That he never had military service with the German Army. That he did not serve in the German Army before coming to America, because he was too young, and they only had an army of 18,000 men. That on his visit back to Germany (P.2419), his army service was not checked.

(P.2419). They all put their savings together to buy the boat.
(P.2420). That he had about 1000 or 1500 marks deposited in Germany.

(P.2420). That at the time of his last return to Germany, he considered that he should go back and help Germany as a loyal German.

RE-CROSS EXAMINATION:

(P.2420). That he did not buy any Reuckwanderer marks in America, but had bought a few bonds in 1937, and converted them in Germany and deposited the money in Germany. (P.2421).

(P.2421). TESTIMONY OF HEINRICH HARM HEINCK, ONE OF THE
ACCUSED, TESTIFYING IN HIS OWN BEHALF:

(P.2421). (The rights of the accused were explained to him, and he elected to take the stand in his own behalf.)

(P.2423). That witness is thirty-five years old, was born in Hamburg, Germany, and came to the United States in 1926 at the age of eighteen years, staying here thirteen years, and going back in 1939.

(P.2424). While in America he was a tool and die maker, working at various places.

(P.2424). That he is married and his wife is in South Germany. That they have a boy one and a half years old.

(P.2424). That he returned to Germany in March or April of 1939. That they were talking of getting rid of all non-citizens who had jobs in the factory where he was working. (P.2425). He went back to Germany to come in the right way with papers; that when he was eighteen years old,

he jumped a German boat, and had been here thirteen years without any papers, coming in and staying here illegally. That one of his purposes in returning was to come back legally. That his other reason, that his wife wanted to see her parents.

(P.2425). That his way back to Germany was paid by the German consul to the extent of one-half fare. That nothing was said about paying this back. (P.2426). That he intended to work over there if he could get a job.

(P.2426). That he had been a member of the Bund here for a little over a year. (P.2426). That on arrival in Germany in April of 1939, he went to work in an automobile factory, and worked until he went to school. That during that time, he made an attempt to return to America, about three or four months after he got there. (P.2427). That he went to the Ausland Organisation and they told him it was impossible to come back. That he wanted to come back because he didn't like it over there.

(P.2428). That at a meeting of the Ausland Organisation, Kappe spoke and after that meeting a fellow by the name of Kurt Lass came up to witness and asked him if he wanted to go back to America, and witness told him he would go right away. Lass told him about stopping production of the American factories. Lass said he was going to talk to Quirin also, who worked at the same factory.

(P.2429). That he had never known Quirin in America. That the next day he told Quirin about it, and Quirin said he would go.

(P.2429). That about a month later, he got a letter from Kappe, telling him to go to school at the farm. He knew then what he was expected to do in America, and learned how to slow down production at the school.

(P.2430). The main job was aluminum factories over here.

(P.2430). That they were instructed to hurt no one so as not to arouse the American people. They were not instructed to get military information or report military information to Germany. That they were taught secret writing for communication between themselves, but were not instructed to ever use it to communicate with Germany. He knew nothing about the handkerchief, nor the matches or secret ink, nor about the address in Lisbon. (P.2432). That they were instructed to rest or get used to the country for about three months to six months. That he never told anyone the opinion of the plan in Germany, but that he never had any intention of going through with it. That he made no effort to get out of the plan, because he wanted to come back to America.

(P.2432). That the first statement given to the F.B.I. was not correct, because he protected all the other fellows. That he corrected all that in his second statement. That the part of his second statement about giving the money to Dasch is wrong, because he was protecting a friend of his. That he told the F.B.I. he never wanted to go through with the plan, but did not tell them he never intended to do so.

(P.2434). After landing, he and Quirin talked the matter over. That he first talked with Quirin about getting out of the plan at the Martinique hotel. That they were not exactly sure what they were going to do, but intended to get a job and to lose all connection with the others.

(P.2435). That he is a member of the Nazi party. That he applied, when he was over here, and became a member when he got back to Germany.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2435). That he never applied for citizenship in America because

he was here illegally. That he had trouble getting a passport back to Germany and they had to identify him. (P.2436). That when he first went over, he intended to live in Germany. That he wanted to see how it was over there, and see if the propaganda he had heard was correct. His wife went with him, and she did not intend to come back. (P.2437). That he first met Kappe in America, seeing him four or five times. Hi

(P.2438). That he did not think he could find his way back to the spot where the explosives were buried.

(P.2439). That when Laas first came to him, he asked him if he would like to go back to America, and witness answered yes. That Laas then said "Kappe is looking for some fellows to do some sabotage work over there or slow production in the factories". Witness then agreed to go. (P.2440). That the letter he received, instructing him to go to a farm, had the name "Ewehr", at the head, which means defense. He

(P.2441). That on receiving the letter, he went to the personnel office, showed them the letter, and did so so they could give him permission to leave the plant.

(P.2441). He was never in the army, but was working for a private factory.

(P.2443). That he told his boss he wanted to go to the school.

(P.2443). That he wore one of the naval uniforms in the submarine and changed it when he landed, putting on his civilian clothes. That the uniforms were issued in Berlin at a public school belonging to the marine division, which operated as one of their offices. (P.2444). That they were instructed there would be guards on the beach, and were told to wear their uniforms and then changed them so that if they got caught they would be prisoners of war.

(P.2444). That it was planned by Kappe that they bury the explosives and buy a farm or other place of business where they could keep them. Neither agreed or objected to the plan. (P.2445). That he registered at the Hotel Martinique under the name of Henry Kaynor, which was the name given to him by Dempsey in Berlin. That this was the name he had planned to use, which was the one on his papers, the false registration card and the false social security card. He gave an address in Albany on State Street, which was suggested by Quirin. Hi

(P.2446). He registered under the name of Henry Kaynor at 149 West 76th Street. He gave an address of Albany, New York. That Quirin registered under the name of Richard Quintas, from Albany. Quintas was the name that had been given him in Germany to use here. (P.2447). That he heard Quintas talk about Dasch, running out on them, and had an idea that Dasch would do so. That this was just a hunch. Hi
O
He

(P.2448). That when Dasch said to the Coast Guard man that he was going to report it in Washington, that the Coast Guard man would hear from him from Washington, he became suspicious of Dasch. He

(P.2451). That Quintas said to him that witness was not living up to orders received in Germany. That they talked about it at different times. Q & He

(P.2451). That he and Quirin went to Burger's room on Friday night; that he opened the drawer and pulled out two letters, one of which was a hotel bill, but (P.2452), he does not remember what was in the other letter, but that it was from Dasch. That Quirin never talked to him about it afterwards.

(P.2453). That his statement with reference to asking how he could return to Germany in case of a nervous breakdown or sickness in the family, is correct. He

(P.2454). That he was in the Bund in 1935, or 1934, and wore a uniform. That he left the Bund in 1936 and joined the D.A.V., which is the labor front in Germany. That he joined in New York City to be in good standing with the Nazi government (party). That on arriving in Germany, he reported to the German Labor Front, and was given a job. That he joined the Nazi party and was a member all the time he was in Germany. He

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2456). That he did not tell anyone at the school that he just intended to come to America.

EXAMINATION BY THE COMMISSION:

(P.2457). That he was anxious to return to America because he liked the liberty of this country. That his wife would like to return right away.

(P.2458). That he told them in Germany that nobody ever gets shot over here because of sabotage work.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2459). That he left his wife, because he had no way of bringing her, but hoped to do so through friends, because she had her first papers. That if they knew in Germany that he had talked here, something would happen to his wife.

(P.2459). TESTIMONY OF RICHARD QUIRIN, ONE OF THE ACCUSED, TESTIFYING IN HIS OWN BEHALF.

(The rights of the accused were explained to him, and he elected to take the stand in his own behalf.)

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2461). That he was born in Berlin on April 26, 1908, taking his mother's name, as he did not know his father's name. That at the age of two years, his mother left him in the care of friends. That he lived in Germany for nineteen years, coming to this country in 1927. That he married in 1936, and have one child, one and three-quarters years old. That his wife and child are with his parents-in-law in Bavaria, Germany.

(P.2462). That while in America, he was a mechanic and tool maker, and also worked as a painter and chauffeur.

(P.2462). That he returned to Germany the last time in 1939, not having been there since 1926. That his wife was a German also. That he took out his first papers but did not know whether his wife did so. That he took out his first papers in either the first or second year he was in this country.

(P.2463). That just before leaving for Germany in 1939, he was chauffeur to Mr. Rauch. That his wife was ill, and he and his employer decided it was mostly homesickness.

(P.2463). That in America he belonged to the Friends of New Germany in 1933. That he joined the Nazi party.

(P.2464). That he was a member of the Friends of New Germany for a year, and after being advised by the consul that he should not belong to that

organization because he was not a citizen, he withdrew.

(P.2464). That his passage to Germany was paid by the German Consulate, and that his wife went ahead of him, he paying her passage.

(P.2464). That on arrival in Germany, he talked to members of the German Labor Front and got a job. He worked at this job until he went to the school. That he met Heinck on this job, and knew none of the others before the school.

(P.2466). That at a social meeting, Kappé made a speech. The next thing he met Heinck who told him that he had heard they could go to America on some mission. That Heinck did not tell him what the mission was, but that he was interested, and told Heinck that he should go ahead. That later Heinck showed him a letter which had his (Quirin's) name on it, instructing them to go to a certain place in Brandenburg. Heinck went to the office and asked for leave, which was subsequently given.

(P.2468). That he knew it was some kind of work in America, but was more interested in getting to America than the work he was supposed to do there. That it was after he arrived at the farm that they were told that the purpose of the trip was to do sabotage. That they were instructed by Kappé to hinder production by cutting down power lines, etc. That they were not told to get any information in America and send it back to Germany.

(P.2469). That they were instructed in secret ink with which they would write to one another in case they wanted to meet. That witness remarked that this procedure was silly, and that he was never going to use it. That he knew nothing about the handkerchiefs or any addresses on them, or any address in Lisbon. That he was not instructed to communicate with anybody outside of his group, or with Lisbon. (P.2470). That he was not instructed in radio, and knew nothing about the matches.

(P.2470). That on landing here, he was very scared. That on the next day Henry told him that George had said they were not going to get the boxes and Henry said "I think the job is over now", and from that time, they started to talk about having hopes that it was all over, and that they were not going to do anything anyway.

(P.2471). That he was uncertain about the plan during the school, and was afraid of the explosives, and felt sure he could never do anything like planned.

(P.2471). That he told his brother-in-law he was going to America, but did not tell his wife.

(P.2472). That as they were to take three to six months before doing anything, he had planned on seeing his former employer and getting advice from him, as to how to get in right with the law.

(P.2472). That Burger had told him his job was to look out for Heinck, but that the only thing he heard about being assistant to anything.

(P.2473). That the first statement he gave to the F.B.I. was not correct because he was afraid it would all come out in the papers, and he was afraid it might hurt his family over in Germany.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P. 2474). That he made two statements to the F.B.I., the first of which is incorrect, and the second is mostly correct. That he made three statements to the F.B.I., the last being something he remembered afterwards and added.

(P.2475). That Dasch was active in getting up in a group, and seemed to be intimate with Kappe and Reinhold Barth.

(P.2475). That he was not forced to go to the Camp. The first thing he heard of the camp was when he saw the letter that Henry had received telling them to go to the farm. That he had heard before when Kappe was there that he would have a chance to go to America and do some kind of work there. (P.2476). That he did know that the work was to prevent production.

(P.2476). That he was a member of the Nazi party in Germany. "Q. You were a loyal Nazi, weren't you?" "A. Well, I suppose so. I had no active work in it. I was just paying my dues, that's all." That he paid his dues voluntarily. "Q. Were you a loyal Nazi?" "A. I think so". "Q. Are you now?" "A. I think so". "Q. You are a loyal German, aren't you?" "A. Yes, sir."

(P.2477). That he had never intended to do any sabotage so that there was no change of mind on his part. That he had not planned to give himself up to the F.B.I., but he had not made up his mind as to just what he was going to do. That if Dasch had told him what he was planning to do, he would have gladly sided with him.

(P.2478). That he does not know whether he intended doing something for the Fatherland, as Kappe told him. That he wanted to help the Fatherland, but he doesn't know whether he was going through with all that. That his main objective was coming to America, and that he was playing up to be just what they wanted him to be, in trying to make up his mind when he was over here. That they told him after the war that he would receive a good job.

(P.2480). That he did not understand that the leader of each group was to correspond with Germany.

(P.2482). That after the meeting at Grant's Tomb, Henry said that the job was over since they didn't have to go back for the boxes. That George said it was too dangerous to get them, or something like that. That witness thought it was too dangerous to get the boxes, and did not want to go near the place.

(P.2481). That he was issued a false registration certificate and a social security card, and given a story and a certain name to be used over here. That that name was Quintas. That he registered under that name at the Martinique Hotel. That he gave an address in Schenectady.

(P.2483). That he never at any time wanted to take over command of the group, nor did he say so. (P.2483). That he was a member of the Friends of New Germany in 1939, and wore a uniform at all meetings.

(P.2484). That he bought Reuckwanderer marks at the bank in 1939. That he bought \$500.00 worth. That it was understood at the time that if you did buy Reuckwanderer marks, you cannot take out a re-entry permit, and after I had bought marks, they told me they could not give me a re-entry permit. That the marks were credited to him in Germany on the understanding that he would stay in Germany.

(P.2485). That the statement in his second statement that he was not forced to come to the United States, but volunteered, is correct. That the statement that he volunteered after he became acquainted with it, that he knew that he was working for the benefit of the German government in the war, by doing what he could in the United States to hinder production of war supplies and material is correct. That the statement that at the time he was in school in Germany and at the time he boarded the submarine it was his intention to come to the United States to do this work, and that if he had not been apprehended it is possible that he would have carried out

his instructions, was made by him. That he had doubts in his mind on the submarine. That he feared it might come out in the papers and didn't dare say anything else to the F. B. I. That the statement was not true.

(P.2487). That the statement that he did not feel himself different from any other soldier and felt that it was his duty to do something for the fatherland, being a German citizen, and loyal to Germany, was an untrue statement.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2487). That it was suggested that he take care of Henry and see that he behaves himself. (P.2488). That at the time his wife returned to Germany, she went to the bank, and bought the Reuckwanderer marks, and that after that it was explained to him that he could not buy travelers checks, and he could not get a re-entry permit.

EXAMINATION BY THE COMMISSION:

(P.2489). That the instructions to wait three to six months indicated a trust in them. That they were supposed to follow the orders of the leader in everything. That if he did not obey the leader, nothing would probably happen to him, but if it were reported in Germany, the family would probably not be paid any more. That Kappe said that if anybody got cold feet, he would be put somewhere on a farm, or be brought away to rest up. That there were no threats ever made to him by any other member of the group. That he made no threats against anyone else.

(P.2491). That he had not made up his mind, but wanted to see what his former employer would say about it. He had not made up his mind the week they were in New York, but was trying to do so. That he does not know what he would have done with the money. 19

(P.2491). That he felt some obligation to the German government since it was supporting him. That he did not communicate with Mr. Rauch because he could not make up his mind what to do. 19

(P.2493). That the purpose of the three to six month period was to get acquainted with the country.

(P.2493) That according to his understanding, you could withdraw from the plan if you felt you could not go through with it.

RECROSS EXAMINATION:

(P.2494). That he spent \$500 or \$600.00. 19

EXAMINATION BY THE COMMISSION:

(P.2494). That Dasch was his leader. That he obeyed all his orders. That he would not obey his orders to spy in this country. That he was not sure whether he would have obeyed his orders to commit sabotage. 19

(P.2495). That Kappe was an army officer, and was, to his knowledge, the boss of the outfit, and he gave orders to Dasch, and witness was to obey Dasch's orders. That he had not received any orders from Dasch so he cannot say when he stopped obeying them.

(P.2495). That he realized the seriousness of the mission as soon as he landed.

(P.2500). (At this point, statement of Col. H.F.Kramer, in reference to a telephone conversation was read into the records. The statement was marked Defendant's Exhibit F).

TESTIMONY OF GEORGE JOHN DASCH
ONE OF THE ACCUSED TESTIFYING
IN HIS OWN BEHALF

DIRECT EXAMINATION

(P.2501). The rights of the accused were explained to him and he elected to be sworn as a witness to testify in his own behalf.

(P.2503). The witness is thirty-nine years old born in Germany on February 7, 1903 in Speyer, Germany. He entered the United States as a stowaway on October 11, 1922. That on or about October 19, 1923 he went to the Barge Office to find out how he could correct his illegal entry.

(P.2504). He made application for naturalization papers but did not complete them because when he made application for his final papers in 1939 he was given a number and left the country before the number was called up.

(P.2505). In 1939 his mother had visited him and told him that conditions in Germany were in good shape.

(P.2506). That when war broke out in Germany, he thought that maybe his mother was right and he would return and find out.

(P.2506). That he has never been a member of any German Organization socially or politically.

(P.2506). That prior to his mother's visit in 1939 he has been opposed to Hitlerism and Nazism. (P.2507). That the trip to Germany was to find out the conditions there. He is glad he went there. That when he got to Germany he found that he had been right to begin with, and that the information his mother had given him was inaccurate.

(P.2508). That his brother went to Germany in 1936 and after his return he praised Hitler and Germany. That on our witness' remonstrance the brother ordered him from the house.

(P.2508). That he left New York on March 22, 1941 and that the German Government paid his fare and he agreed to pay it back.

(P.2509). That while on the boat he met forty or forty-one other Germans including Werner Thiel. That he was isolated from the others because most of them knew each other. (2510) That after they left Honolulu the others started to rave about Hitler and singing songs in which he did not join. That they therefore became hostile to him and whipped him. (2512). That Thiel did not participate in this.

(P.2513). That the German Consul had told him prior to leaving New York to keep quiet aboard ship. That he therefore decided that the other people thought he might be an F.B.I. agent.

(P.2515). That the others on the boat threatened to report him when they arrived in Berlin.

That they arrived in Berlin on May 13, 1941. That he went to work on June 6th with the German Foreign Office as a civilian employee. That he was a monitor with the Foreign Office in the American Group and received and translated all transmissions from American Radio Stations. (P.2517) That he stayed with this work until February 28, 1942.

(P.2517). Kappe was the man who helped him get the job by calling the head of the Foreign Office, Section R. (P.2518) That he first met Kappe on June 1st or 2nd, 1941 in Berlin and had not known him in the United States.

(P.2518). That in his position he had an opportunity to learn the condition of the German people and (P.2519) found that the people were slaves.

(P.2519). That he gave them in minute detail to the F.B.I. and told them everything he knew. (P.2520). These statements are contained in defendant's Exhibit A.

(P.2521). After he learned the conditions of the German people he decided it should be fought and that the only way it could be fought effectively was to get out of Germany.

(P.2523). When he asked a young lady by the name of Leonhardt what the real meaning of "Abwehr" was. She replied that it means defense. That he asked her if she knew anyone there on her affirmative answer and she gave him the address of a First Lieutenant Kobe whom he looked up subsequently, but was unable to find him.

(P.2524). That he spoke to a young lady who worked for the High Command and she said that she knew Kappe. (P.2525) That on the following Monday or Tuesday he received a letter from Barth who said that Kappe was sore at him for trying to find other work without going him (Kappe).

(P.2525). That he went then to Kappe who told him to forget Intelligence 1 and that he would get in touch with him later.

(P.2526). Thereafter he met a Dr. Wessel who asked him various questions about America, England and South America, etc. That the man asked him to write a version of his own imagination on how to get to America. (P.2527) That he went to various places and obtained information.

(P.2528). That he looked for every possible avenue of escape from Germany and ultimately found a way out through the sabotage school.

(P.2529). That his sole desire was to get out of Germany by what ever process was necessary to give him an opportunity to fight Nazism and that this was the sole reason he entered into the Sabotage School.

(P.2529). That he had a conversation with Burger in which Burger unboomed himself.

(P.2530). That before going to school, he had a record which stated that he had been in a concentration camp for seventeen months.

(P.2530). That on the first Saturday night of the school he and Burger walked together and he asked Burger to tell him his side of the internment. That Burger started damning the Nazis whereupon the witness told him to keep quiet that the day would come that he, witness, would reopen the matter again.

(P.2531). That he was selected as leader of one group before the school started.

(P.2531). That the two sailors who landed with him had pistols but that no other members of the group were armed. That he had objected to Kappe's suggestion that they come over armed and that his objection won.

(P.2532). After landing he saw the coast Guard and he ran up to the Coast Guardsman and told him that they got lost and landed there. (P.2533) that the Coast Guardsman told him that they were at Amagansett and told him to come along. Whereupon witness stated that he could not. At this time Burger came along and said something in German and Witness told him to get back with the others. That prior to speaking to the Coast Guardsman he told the two sailors to go back to the boat.

(P.2533). That the Coast Guardsman was scared as well as the witness that he offered the Coast Guardsman a bribe and he finally took it. (P.2534) that he told the Coast Guardsman to take a good look at him as the day would come when he would hear from him (witness) from Washington.

(P.2534). The Captain of the U boat had instructed them to over power and capture anyone they met on the shore.

(P.2535). That he did not come here to kill anybody. That the Coast Guardsman was unarmed.

(P.2535). While waiting in the railroad station he debated calling up Washington but he decided not to do so because he had to keep the men together.

(P.2537). That he reopened with Burger the subject they had started while they were in school on Saturday and then discussed the matter with him on Sunday morning. That at that time Burger disclosed that he never had any intention of doing any acts of sabotage that his only desire was to get away from Germany. The witness disclosed to Burger that he had the same intention. That they found that each had the same thought.

(P.2538). That he got in touch with the F.B.I. on Sunday evening at 7:40 or 7:53, he told them that he was a German citizen and asked them to instruct Washington that he would be in Washington on Thursday or Friday. That he gave the name of Frans Daniel Pastorius and a description of himself. They wanted him to come to the office but that he would not do so.

(P.2539). That he came to Washington on Thursday evening and on Friday morning he called Government information and inquired as to where was the best place to disclose his information. That he then called Colonel Kramer, who was out, and left word for him to call back.

(P.2540). He then called the F.B.I. and talked with Mr. Traynor. That Colonel Kramer then called he advised Colonel Kramer that he had already talked to the F.B.I. and was going to see them.

(P.2541). That he thereafter discussed the matter with the F.B.I. for five days.

(P.2542). That at the end of the first day or on the next day, Mr. Traynor said that when he, Dasch, had first come in that he, Traynor, thought that he, Dasch, was a crackpot that later he had known that Dasch had come for something.

(P.2542). That the main reason he left Germany was to fight Hitler.

(P.2543). That he had stuck to the idea that nothing should be done for at least three or four months in order to give himself a leeway to provide for being delayed and so forth.

(P.2544). That Kappe first wanted him to wait only four weeks but that he had convinced Kappe that they should wait longer.

(P.2544). That during his entire discourse with the F.B.I. he was under protective custody. That he found that he was under arrest on the 28th or 29th of June.

(P.2545). That he agreed to enter a plea for the protection of his father and mother on Saturday night. (P.2546) that after thinking it over he changed his mind that he saw a newspaper with his pictures on it and assumed that the F.B.I. had told the entire story to the press. He sent for Mr. Donagan and told him the next day that he could not plead guilty.

CROSS EXAMINATION

(P.2547). That he met Kappe first on June 2, 1941. Each time he was cross-examined on his stay in America. That Kappe seemed to have no record on him. (P.2548). that he met Kappe again at a meeting for German-American people. (P.2549) that he saw him again in November at which time Kappe wanted to know why he had contacted the Espionage I. That he saw him again on the second or third of December and that Kappe told him he could use him to go to America. He said that the German High Command wanted a group of German people to go to the United States to do sabotage. The witness told him he was interested and Kappe asked witness to draw up a little memorandum.

(P.2550). He spent several days in drawing up a memorandum five pages. (P.2551) That the memorandum listed three kinds of sabotage political, industrial, and military and described each one. That military sabotage occupied the last two pages and the industrial sabotage recommended the difference between the A.F. of L. and the C.I.O. be nourished. (P.2552) that he took it back to Kappe who later complimented him on it.

(P.2552). That he got his ideas on military sabotage from the radio.

(P.2553). That he next saw Kappe just before Christmas. Kappe told him that there would be more than himself going to America and that the people who went would take part in the school. (P.2554) that he suggested only the name of Thiel and this was in March of 1942 at the time he first met Kerling. That at first Thiel said neither yes nor no. (P.2555) that he had helped get Thiel in.

(P.2556). That Kappe gave him the records of the defendants to go over in June of 1942, that this school was organized sometime ago by the German High Command.

In March Kappe gave him the records of some persons to decide whether those persons had sufficient knowledge of English or could be used for sabotage. That he gave the name of Kerling, Neubauer and two or three other names. (P.2558) He made no report to Kappe of his study.

(P.2559). That when he landed he was nervous and happy.

(P.2559). That Burger told him that there were Gestapo in the F.B.I. but (P.2560) he did not believe that story.

(P.2560). That he had three reasons for not going to the F.B.I. immediately. First was that he was in a mental and nervous condition. Secondly, he had to be human, that he did not know why Haupt came over and he could not take away the chance from him to prove why he came here. He had to give every person a chance to say what the witness had to say.

(P.2562). Playing cards steadied his nerves.

(P.2562). That he is not and never has been a communist.

(P.2563). That he is loyal to the people of Germany and to all good, decent, honest law abiding citizens regardless whether they are in Germany or America or France.

REEXAMINATION

(P.2564). That he was not at any time in 1941 or 1942 sworn in as a member of the military forces of Germany.

CROSS EXAMINATION BY DETECTIVE ROYALL

(P.2565). That the file which Kappe gave him on certain of the defendants indicated that he had made a careful investigation of their records. The record of Burger showed that he had been in a concentration camp in Germany for seventeen months. That the Gestapo are the bosses of the concentration camp.

(P.2565). That both in Germany and afterwards, Burger was nervous about the Gestapo thinking that there were agents of the Gestapo in the United States and in the ranks of the F.B.I.

(P.2566). That from the time of his conversation with Burger in New York, Burger knew that he was planning to report to the F.B.I. That witness requested Burger to wait and allow witness to report it in his own way.

(P.2566). That no instructions were given them in Germany about sending in military information back to Germany.

(P.2567). The Kaukasus was on the fourth floor of an apartment house which had at its door way a sign meaning "Editors of the Kaukasus".

(P.2568). That he talked to Haupt and Kappe seemed to know a good deal about Haupt. (P.2569) That he knew Haupt was an American citizen through his parents who were American citizens on the statements of Haupt himself. That Haupt was the youngest of the group and he knew that Haupt could have only been in Germany from December 1941.

(P.2570). That he thought that Haupt being in Germany such a short time must have some other reason for going through the school and into this land.

(P.2570). That he had a good chance to observe Thiel on the boat going to Japan and (P.2571) that he was partially responsible for Thiel coming into this land.

(P.2571). That when the suggestion was made that he plead guilty on June 28, he had already given the F.B.I. most of the facts of the case. (P.2572) but they told him if he would plead guilty and go to prison that after six months or three months a Presidential pardon would be obtained for him. That he had agreed for the security of his parents.

RE-CROSS EXAMINATION BY THE ATTORNEY GENERAL

(P.2572). That Reinhold Barth, an instructor at the school was the husband of his first cousin. That he never discussed sabotage with Barth. Barth is an idealistic Nazi. That his brother is not connected with the Russian Government.

TESTAMONY OF DEAN F. MCWHORTER
SPECIAL AGENT OF THE F. B. I.
A WITNESS FOR THE DEFENSE

DIRECT EXAMINATION

(P.2578). The witness had a conversation around the middle of June with a person giving his name as *Polonius* (P.2578). On the evening of June 14th a man called and first stated that he wanted a record made of the call. He gave a name which could not first be understood and was then spelled. He asked the man to come to the office to give whatever information he wanted to but the man refused saying he wished to see somebody in Washington. The man said that he had just arrived from Germany two days ago. (2580). He asked that the Washington Office be advised that he was coming down next Thursday or Friday to see Mr. Hoover.

(P.2581). He did not advise the Washington Office about the call and did not suggest that anyone so advise the Washington Office. He prepared a memorandum on the information for the New York Office. Action, for review by his supervisors and their action.

(P.2582). *Dfs. Ex. C* is a photostatic copy of his memorandum.

(P.2584). He said the information received by him in his opinion called for no further suggestion for investigation.

(P.2586). He was simply reporting the information for his Supervisor that it was his suggestion that his record be made for the purpose of the record did not restrict action by his supervisor.

TESTAMONY OF EARL J. CONNOLLY
ASSISTANT DIRECTOR, F.B.I.
A WITNESS FOR THE DEFENSE

(P.2588). Witness was in charge of the proceedings leading up to the trial for the F.B.I. That the matter was first turned over to him on Monday, June 15th, at which time ~~the cases of explosives were first delivered in the hands of the F.B.I. on June 13th by the Coast Guard.~~ (P.2590) Only such Agents as were concerned with the investigation were informed as to the recovery of the explosives and that McWhorter was not so informed. That from June 13th he has no identification of any person by the name given by Lasch and no medium by which he could be identified with the case at that time. To the witness' knowledge the information contained in the memorandum from McWhorter was not communicated to Washington.

TESTAMONY OF ERNEST PETER BURGER
ONE OF THE ACCUSED TESTIFYING
IN HIS OWN BEHALF

(P.2591). The accused was informed of his right and elected to be sworn and take the stand in his own behalf.

(P.2592). That he was born in Augsburg, Germany on September 1, 1906. That the statement that had been introduced in evidence was freely and voluntarily given and is correct in every particular.

(P.2593). He gave a short supplemental statement which was a condensation of the first and does not contradict the first in any particular.

(P.2593). That at the beginning of the case he was willing to go on the stand, did not do so on his lawyer's advice because of the other defendants.

(P.2593). He lived in Germany until 1927 at which time he came to America and stayed here until 1933 working as a tool and That he obtained his final citizenship papers while here.

(P.2594). That he was a member of the National Guard of Michigan and Wisconsin while here and received an honorable discharge from those bodies. That he also received a sharpshooter's insignia. He said he had these documents when he was apprehended and surrendered into the F.B.I., as well as a special letter from the Commanding Officer.

(P.2595). He said he went to Germany in 1933 because he was out of work and his family sent him a ticket.

(P.2595). That while in Germany he did not take any affirmative act to renounce his American citizenship except in connection with joining the Armed forces of Germany. That he joined those forces in 1941 but had not participated in any fighting in Germany. Prior to the time of his coming to the United States he had been a member of the Volunteer Corps against Poland. He said he had received two decorations for bravery in action (P.2596) which were taken from him by the Gestapo.

(P.2596). He joined the Nazi party in February of 1923 and was one of the old storm troopers. That on return to Germany in 1933 he rejoined the Nazi party.

(P.2596). That he was an aide de camp to Ernst Roehm in 1933 and remained on his staff until June of 1934 when Roehm was killed. At that time large numbers of the old storm troopers were killed, that as he was assigned to the Chief of the Medical Corps he escaped massacre. (P.2597). That around three thousand leaders and their friends were killed in the Roehm. From that time on the entire course of the party changed and his former enemies got control of the party and formed a strong opposition to anyone who had belonged to the storm troopers before 1933.

(P.2597). That after Roehm was killed most of the storm troopers tried to get out of Germany. (P.2598) but were unable to do so legally. That he made an effort to get out of Germany after the purge but was unable to do so.

(P.2598). In 1939 and 1940 charges were made against him by the Gestapo.

(P.2598). That after Roehm was killed Kintler mess was separated from the storm troopers built up as a police force.

(P.2599). after the outbreak of the war he got in difficulties with the Gestapo and finally gave his case to the Justice Department on the charge of falsification of his papers. (P.2600). He was held by the Gestapo for seventeen months, first in jail in Poland and then in the cellar of the headquarters of the Gestapo in Berlin, then in the Justice Department sent in a concentration camp.

(P.2601). (The witness did not answer questions as to how he was treated during that period.)

(P.2601). That it was not the treatment of himself that hurt but the treatment of his wife. That his wife expected a baby and they told her that he, , had stolen money, expected eight years on a chain gang and advised her to get a divorce.

That she refused to get a divorce, had a break down and a miscarriage. (P.2602) They told her to bring my uniform down to the Gestapo so they could rip off his *epaulettes*. She refused to do that. They made him write a farewell letter to his wife telling her that he would never come back and stopped his bank account. They took away his *epaulettes* and decorations.

(P.2602). Before this he had had political reasons for getting out of Germany and after this he had personal reasons to get himself and wife out too.

(P.2603). That from time on he made efforts to get out of Germany, going to the Intelligence Department and volunteering for any job or anything to get out of Germany.

(P.2603). That they first had in mind sending him to but this was dismissed and in February or March of 1942, he had a letter from Kappe explaining that his wish would be fulfilled. This letter said that his transfer from a regular army station to a special formation was on its way.

(P.2603). That he had volunteered to do anything as he told them to rehabilitate himself.

(P.2604). That he knew of no other way of getting out of Germany other than underground to Switzerland and if he had done this it would have been illegal and he could not have taken his parents or folks along and if he had the authorities would immediately have taken his people. That if he went out legally, it would not have effect his people.

(P.2604). They were given instructions not to hurt anyone.

(P.2605). He tried not to express hostility toward the Gestapo but that after Kappe explained to a group of the boys that he had been in camp probably made several remarks about it. He told one of the boys he did not consider the Gestapo in Germany as being the same thing.

(P.2605). He wrote to his wife before leaving the submarine.

(P.2606). He also wrote her several letters before leaving Berlin and gave her a password, personally.

(P.2606). He was not disturbed by the incident of the gold certificate but was disappointed because the matter had not been handled more carefully.

(P.2608). That he was informed by Kappe that he would be put on any concentration camp when he got back in order to become a good citizen again. That it is considered in Germany that a concentration is not a penance, but a way of education.

(P.2609). That he used his own name throughout and gave an old address when he registered at the hotel in New York.

(P.2609). That when he came to this country he formulas of explosives which he lost, some receipts for money in Germany, a photograph of his wife with German *prints* on it. He did not attempt to dispose of them.

(P.2610). That he made no attempt to dispose of the money that he brought, kept it in his room.

(P.2610). That the first he knew that any member of the group

might be planning to expose the plans on Saturday, June 13th. That he had some conversation in Europe with Dasch on the matter.

(P.2611). He had made plans to get out of Germany legally. His second point was to make it clear that it would be impossible for anyone else to carry out orders. That he dragged his bag across the beach for this purpose and dropped some articles, before he ever saw the Coast Guard. He could make no plans for what to do after the landing because he was not familiar with conditions here.

(P.2612). That he was afraid of the Gestapo and he was afraid that the others did not trust him. He was informed that the Gestapo had agents in this country in the F.B.I. He had heard that Serbold and about thirty others who were members of the Gestapo had been caught by the F.B.I.

(P.2613). His fear of the Gestapo was the reason he did nothing in New York. Dasch telephoned the Gestapo in New York.

(P.2613). That he was in no hurry to report the matter as he had made it impossible for anyone to carry out the plans because of exposing the explosives. Secondly, Dasch had explained what he was going to do and he was waiting for Dasch.

(P.2614). Dasch waited for Thursday because his nerves broke down. He got a letter from Dasch which was written in New York telling him that Dasch had gone to Washington. He knew Dasch had gone to report it to the F.B.I. He remained in the hotel registered in his own name and made no effort to leave.

(P.2615). He gave the F.B.I. all the information he could. He made no false statements.

(P.2616). The only incorrect information he gave to them was with respect to any relatives he had in the United States. That he has a distant relative an old lady seventy-five years old a second cousin who resides here.

(P.2616). That at the time of making the statement he did not know they had found the articles on the beach. He told them everything that had happened.

He had no initiative.

(P.2618). That the reference to the submarine landing a third party in this country was the result of the conversation which he overheard in Europe. He did not report this immediately to the F.B.I. on landing here because he did not think of it.

CROSS EXAMINATION
By the Attorney General

(P.2619). That he joined the Nazi party in 1923 and took part in the original *Brown Shirts* after which time the police prohibited the party. That he joined again in 1933 when he went back to Germany and has been a member ever since. (P.2620) He wore the party uniform. That he had a decoration for being a member of the original organization. That the Gestapo took this decoration away and prohibited his wearing other decorations for bravery in battles. The *epaulettes* part of the Nazi uniform.

(P.2621). He had known Kappe in this country. As Kappe told

him never to refer to him, Kappe, in this country. (P.2622) that Kappe was to come over but that witness was not to meet him. He said that witness was to put an ad in the Chicago Tribune on the first and fifteenth of the month beginning with August indicating that he had established a front in Chicago. (P.2623) That this was to be a communication to Kappe that he had established a front in America. (P.2624) that nothing was said about radio. That the advertisement was to mean that witness only had established a front.

(P.2625). That his orders were to establish a front or business in Chicago. (P.2625) That his decision to use his own name was approved by Kappe. That he used his own name because he had papers in that name. B

(P.2626). That Exhibit E -266 is his naturalization papers. That the words "passport issued" were taken off the paper to indicate that he had never left the United States.

(P.2627). That the secret writing was the communication between the group and the United States. That they would write only where they should meet. He knew nothing about the handkerchiefs until after he landed and was told about it by Dasch who said it had important notes on it.

(P.2629). Before he was released by the Gestapo, he had guard work in a prisoner's camp as a soldier. That on going into the army, he took an oath of allegiance to Adolph Hitler as the highest in command of the army. That he took no other oath but signed a contract to the high command of the German army. That he does not know what the contracts of the others contain. B

(P.2630). That the uniforms were issued in Berlin were fatigue uniforms. That the uniforms they issued were like the ones which had been shown in Court.

(P.2631). That on the trip over on the submarine, they were all under the command of the Captain of the submarine who is a member of the navy.

(P.2631). That the actions of Dasch were such that nobody had any confidence in him, and did not understand him. That there was no harmony in the group and each was watching the other. That for this reason Dasch a second leader had the idea that if Dasch disappeared he would take over command. This would have been carrying out orders. They were suspicious of Dasch as a leader. (P.2633) That they first thought that Dasch might get away with the money. And all three thought more or less that he might not carry out his orders. (P.2634) That he had this thought in Berlin but was not suspicious of the other two. C B 9-14

(P.2634). He wanted to find a legal way of getting out of Berlin either with the party or with the army, there being no other way. He first decided to get out of Germany in July, 1934. That he first tried to get into the Foreign Department to finish his education at the University of Berlin, but did not succeed. (P.2635) That he talked to Miss Schultz toward getting his American passport straight but with no success. His efforts to get out were continuous since 1934. That he was an American in 1934 and was also a member of the party and a former aide de camp to Roehm. He stated he could not go to the American Consulate (P.2636) because he could not afford to as thousands of Americans were getting in and out of Germany from 34 through 38.

(P.2636). That in 1935 he was not a loyal German.

(P.2636). Prior to the mistreatment of his wife, his reasons for getting out were political and thereafter it became personal.

(P.2637). They first suggested that he go to *Ireland* but he heard no more of it. If he had got out illegally, there would have been reprisals against his family. That he never meant to go through with this from the beginning. (P.2638) If the news of his giving information here got back to Germany, it would have hurt his family but that the P.B.I. had promised it would be kept secret. And he does not think there is any chance of the news getting back to Germany.

(P.2639). That while in Germany he had no definite plan over here. (P.2639) that his reason for getting out of Germany was to protect his family. (P.2641) had he not had a family, he would not have left Germany illegally and preferred coming over here legally on a submarine than going over the Swiss border illegally.

(P.2641). That on landing on Anagansett it was dark and foggy that he put a bottle of snuffs sticking up in the sands. Dropped a box of cigarettes on the sand and (P.2642) he put his raincoat on the top of the bank (P.2642) that the cigarettes were less than ten feet from the water.

(P.2644). He also dropped bathing trunks and a folded vest up on the bank and away toward the boxes intending to leave tracks to mark the way.

(P.2645). That he put down three different items before he ever saw the Coast Guard. And at that time he was thinking of nothing but getting away from the beach that he decided on the submarine to make their plans fail.

(P.2646). He trust Dasch and had confidence in him after he had talked to him. (P.2647). He did not suspect Dasch of giving the plan away before talking to him. Did not expect him to carry out the orders given him. He came to this conclusion during the school. A

(P. 2648). That Dasch consistently disobeyed the orders of the superiors while in school and until getting on the submarine. That he lost his papers and was not considered a competent leader for an undertaking of this nature.

(P.2649). That the incident of the gold certificates was another proof that Germany didn't give a damn what happened to the group. That such action was a dirty trick. That they also gave them less money than they were supposed to have. (P.2650). He felt from the very beginning that he could not trust his superiors.

(P.2651). That at the school, he was told by Kappe that every member of both groups had been assigned as members of the German army.

(P.2657). That Dasch was intimate with Kappe. (P.2658). That Dasch was also intimate with Barth. (P.2659). That if Dasch had not turned the matter in, he would have done so himself. That he decided at the school that he would turn it in, but he did not know to whom he should turn it in.

(P.2659). That his first hunch that Dasch would not go through with it was on June 13th. That he also had an idea that Heinck could not go through with it.

(P.2660). That Kappe made a statement about all being assigned army numbers when Kerling, and possibly Thiel were present. (P.2661). That none of the other boys ^{told him} had been assigned to army units.

(P.2662). That he was mixed up in the Communist riot in Germany in 1923 to 1927, and (P.2663) it wasn't safe for him to stay in Germany anymore. That he rejoined the Nazi party immediately after returning to Germany. That he took no additional oath.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY COLONEL RISTINE:

(P.2664). That during the school, he and Dasch were taking a walk and that he expressed his feelings about the Gestapo, and Dasch stopped him and told him that there would be a time he would be asked more about it. (P.2665). That his statements against the Gestapo were bitter, and it was during this statement he was stopped by Dasch. That had Dasch been a loyal Nazi, he probably would have turned witness in at that time. That because of another incident he thought Dasch was not the Nazi he pretended to be, and others had the same idea. (P.2666). That he and others had the impression that Dasch was not interested in living up to the orders they were given.

(P.2668). Prior to leaving the submarine, they were instructed to overcome any guard found and bring him back to the boat. That he came up to Dasch while he was talking to the Coast Guard. That there would have been no difficulty in overpowering the Coast Guardsman. (P.2669). Dasch told him to go back to the other two boys. That this indicated that Dasch was not following orders of the submarine captain.

(P.2670). That Dasch first told him of contacting a newspaperman in Paris on June 14th. That he saw Dasch sitting by a man in Paris and Dasch later explained that this was the man. (P.2671). That when Dasch told him to go back to the boys on the beach, he explained that Dasch had run into an American sailor. That all three kept away. (P.2672). That while they were on the beach, Dasch told him that he had given money to the coast guard, and had told him that the coastguardsman would hear from Dasch in Washington. That during the walk to Jamaica, Dasch told him that the boy's name was Frank Collins and that there would be a day when he would need to remember that name. That the name was to be used in connection with Washington. (P.2673). That he first had confidences with Dasch on the night of June 13th, and again the next morning. (P.2674). That he found that Dasch hated National Socialism, and that his mission here was to fight National Socialism. That he agreed with Dasch and told him so.

(P.2676) Dasch had told him that if he were a loyal Nazi, he would have to throw Dasch out of a 14th story window.

(P.2677). That after meeting the other boys that night, they called the F.B.I. That he agreed to this call. That Dasch waited because his mental state was such that he did not feel equal to talk with anyone of the F.B.I. immediately. (P.2679). After Dasch returned from playing cards, he said he was ready to talk with the F.B.I. After he came back he appeared to be quiet, and his hands did not tremble. (P.2680). That he waited in the hotel in New York while Dasch went to Washington. That he expected the F.B.I. and told them he was expecting them.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2681). That Kappe first told him he should appear he should appear as a Czechoslovakian refugee with a different name; but he did not want to use a false name. That he could not leave Germany during 1934 or 1935, and up until the time of the war, because he was employed by the party and could not just disappear. That a party member could not leave Germany except on official business.

(P.2682). That he relied on the promises of the F.B.I. not to divulge when he made his statement. (P.2683). That Dasch had told him that he was going to report the matter, and he relied on Dasch as to the method of reporting.

(P.2683). That his whole intention in joining this group and coming to America was to get out of Germany and get even.

EXAMINATION BY THE COMMISSION:

(P.2686). That Dasch, Heink and Quirin were the only men who came ashore with him and stayed. That the sailors left for the submarine immediately after Dasch had contacted the coast guard. That Dasch stated that he had given the orders for the sailors to do that. That the submarine lay off the beach until after they buried the boxes.

(P.2687). That he had no intention of coming back and finding the boxes. That it would be easy to find the boxes because the things he had left. That the place was not otherwise specially marked.

(P.2688). That in Germany nobody could come out with his ideas as to what he intended to do, because he did not know whom he could trust. That in the past, Kerling asked him what he thought of his group, to which he stated he did not think Heink to be a 100% saboteur and that George Dasch was not an ideal leader for a mission like that. (P.2689). That as to this, Kerling answered, "Well, there will be a way to get out." That it was explained in Lorient that Quirin would be the assistant leader; if anything happened to Dasch, that he would be the leader. That Kappe wanted to make witness second leader, but Dasch opposed it, saying that he had no confidence in witness. (P.2690). That Dasch was related to Barth, and had worked with Kappe a few months making plans for the group at school.

(P.2690). That Dasch was never a fanatical or idealistic Nazi. That he knew nothing about national socialism. That the school was the property of the German High Command, the house master was a non-commissioned officer, and the leader of the school was Lieutenant Kappe. That Kappe said that all of those that did not belong to the army before they joined the school were assigned to the army, but that on the other hand when Kappe talked to him about his contract, he had told him he could be taken out of the army and make the contract as a civilian. That he refused to do this.

(P.2691). That the uniforms worn at school were not German uniforms, but former Czechoslovakian uniforms dyed black. That these were issued to protect their civilian clothes.

(P.2692). "My reasoning told me that if it is a school which belonged to the German headquarters, and all that, then they must be somehow connected with the Army, and all that." That Kappe said that since February, 1942, all had been assigned to the Army.

(P.2693). That his character was given an "excellent" on his two discharges from the National Guard.

(P.2694). That Dasch is a first-class salesman; that you could trust him as a friend; that he has no clear view of political ideals, and believes in fighting against injustice being done in Germany.

(P.2694). That he knew Hitler personally and intimately. That he took an oath of allegiance to Hitler in 1933 when he joined the Nazi party and (P.2696) when he entered the army. That he is not loyal to Hitler, and is not a German citizen. That he lost his loyalty to Hitler in 1934 because he killed Roehm and his other friends.

(P.2697). That he had a very uncertain feeling with the others. That he was pointed out to them that if anyone exposed the plan, that person was to be killed.

(P.2697). That he does not consider Dasch as a loyal German.

RECROSS EXAMINATION BY THE
ATTORNEY GENERAL:

(P.2698). That they had no way of reporting anything back to Germany. (P.2698). That in case they were arrested, that pay would cease. That there was a plan made as to what they were to say in case they were arrested, but that witness does not recall such plan.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2699). That he started searching the beach before he contacted the coast guardsman and continued thereafter.

(P.2699). That Defendant's Exhibit H is a letter from his superior in the National Guard dated May 26, 1933. That Exhibit I is a letter from the same person dated September 30, 1933. That Exhibits J and K are his discharges from the National Guard.

RECROSS EXAMINATION BY THE
ATTORNEY GENERAL:

(P.2707). That political statements were omitted from his statement to the F.B.I., but nothing connected with this case.

FURTHER EXAMINATION BY THE COMMISSION:

(P.2707). That they were to tell nothing in case they got caught.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2708). That he signed a pledge of secrecy that covered confession. The penalty was death.

(P.2708). That at this point, defendants introduced in evidence a confidential letter from The Adjutant General relating to a change of the

Eastern theater of operations to the Western Defense Command, dated March 18, 1942, as Exhibit L, and a map showing the limits of the Eastern Defense Command, marked as Exhibit M.

TESTIMONY OF MRS. MARIE KERLING, A WITNESS FOR THE DEFENSE.

(P.2716). That the witness lives at 326 East 51st Street, New York City, and is a cook by occupation. She is the wife of defendant Kerling, and has been married to him since 1930.

(P.2717). That Kerling was in this country, she was told, on June 23rd, that the last she had seen him before that was when he returned from Germany in 1939 or 1940. That he tried to go to Germany on a boat in 1939, but was stopped by the Government. (P.2718). That she knew he was trying to return to Germany in 1939, and she knew that he did go in 1940.

(P.2718). That while they were working together they were not happy, and he wanted to divorce, (P.2719), but that this trouble cleared up later. That when war broke out, he gave up his job and wanted to go to Germany. (P.2719). That after his return to this country she found he had been to Germany.

(P.2720). That Hedy Engermann is a friend of hers, whom she had known about a year, having met her through Mrs. Neubauer in New York City.

(P.2720). That Kerling communicated with her several times while he was in Germany, asking her to come to Germany. That she had a chance to go once. Her health during this time was bad, and she told her husband that she would come home after the war. (P.2721). That at one time, the German Consul called her down and asked her if she wanted to go home, and she told them no. That she did not tell her husband why she would not go to Germany, and did not tell him she was sick and needed an operation.

(P.2722). That Hedy Engermann knew she had a chance to go to Germany.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY THE ATTORNEY GENERAL:

(P.2722). That she was born in Germany and is a German citizen; that she did not try to get back to Germany. That her husband bought a boat. That her husband wanted to go back to Germany to fight with Germany. (P.2723). That she was a member of the German Labor Party in 1930, but never attended any meetings.

(P.2724). That she first heard that Kerling was back on June 23rd. That Helmut Leiner told her this, and took her to see him, but they missed him at that time. (P.2725). The reason she did not want to go home was that she wanted to save her money and have an operation done here.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2726). That she asked Kerling if he wanted to marry some one else.

RECROSS EXAMINATION:

(P.2726). That Kerling answered her suggestion that he marry someone else by telling her that he loved her.

TESTIMONY OF HEDY ENGERMANN, 238 EAST 26th STREET, NEW YORK CITY, A WITNESS FOR THE DEFENSE.

(P.2728). That she has known the defendant Kerling for two and a half years. That she met him in Miami and often went on the boat during the time

she knew him down there. (P.2729). That at this time, she was a waitress residing in Miami. That she saw a great deal of Kerling, and grew very fond of him. That she knew he was married, but that made no difference. That she left Miami before he did, and went to New York to her mother. That while working in the World's Fair in New York, Kerling came from Miami to New York where she saw him frequently. That his wife knew about it, and that she talked with his wife after Kerling had gone to Germany. That he left on July 27th, and she knew he was going to Germany.

(P.2732). That while Kerling was in Germany, she heard from him.
(P.2733). That she kept his letters, and that they are now in the custody of the F.B.I.

(P.2733). That Mrs. Kerling wanted her to go to Germany, and suggested that she marry Kerling. That Kerling tried to get his wife to come to Germany. That Mrs. Kerling insisted that witness go instead. (P.2734). That Mrs. Kerling was supposed to leave for Germany a few weeks ago, having been notified by the Swiss Consulate that a trip was being arranged in Germany. That she said she did not want to go and wanted witness to go. That she wanted witness to marry Kerling. (P.2735). That witness thinks Mrs. Kerling has ceased to love her husband. That she considered her husband more of a brother than a husband.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2735). That she saw Kerling frequently before he left for Germany, and they were very good friends. (P.2736). That she first learned he was back on June 22nd, and Helmut Leiner asked her to Central Park, and when she got there, she met Kerling. He told her that night how he had come back. He said he had come back on a submarine. That he did not tell her what he had come back to do. (P.2737). He mentioned that Hermann Neubauer had come back with him; that he gave her some money; that he gave her an odd twenty dollar bill, and Leiner gave her a \$50.00 bill for change. That she gathered that Leiner had received his \$50.00 bill from Kerling. K K

(P.2738). That she changed the bill, but did not give the money back to Kerling because she did not see him again. She did not give any money back to Leiner either. (P.2738). That at the time of meeting him in the park, he asked her to go to Florida with him. That she would have gone to Florida with him and so told him. (P.2739). That he did not say how they were going to Florida. He said they were going to Cincinnati and Chicago, and asked her to go with him and she agreed.

(P.2739). That he wrote her several times from Germany, and that the F.B.I. has the letters. That he said he landed on the submarine on a rubber boat.

REDIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2741). That she did not ask Kerling what he was going to do on his trip because she knew him, and knew that questioning would not do any good. That he would have told her eventually of his own accord.

(P.2742). That he asked her to go to Chicago, Cincinnati and Florida.

(P.2743). That in spite of her responsibilities of her grocery store she would have gone with him.

EXAMINATION BY THE COMMISSION:

(P.2743). That Kerling merely said he had to go to Florida, without giving the reason. That they did not discuss the method of travel. That he was going alone.

(P.2744). (At this point all defendants rested.)

REBUTAL EVIDENCE FOR THE PROSECUTION:

Testimony of STEPHEN H. SHERIDAN,

General Staff Corp, Washington, D. C., on duty in the Operations Division, War Department, General Staff, in charge of the North American Theater Group.

(P.2746). (Witness was shown paragraph 2 of defendant's Exhibit L and asked to explain the reason for the order and the effect thereof).

That the theater of operations is defined in sealed service regulations as the area of the theater of war necessary for military operations and the administration and supply incident to military operations.

(P.2747). That the term "theater of operations" is pertaining to the Eastern part of the United States, was changed to that of the Eastern Defense Command on March 18, because experience had indicated that the supply establishments, training center, ports, etc., should operate under the War Department rather than under the Commanding General of the Eastern United States. That was the purpose of making the change.

(P.2748). That so far as the technical situation is concerned, there was no change at all. That in a tactical sense, the Eastern Defense Command is still a theater of operations. That the purpose of changing the name was to eliminate all of those parts that had to do with supply establishments and administration. That this is the same with other defense commands. That it is the same in Alaska, which is a theater of operations where the Japanese are in possession of some of the islands.

(P.2749). That a defense command is a territorial agency designed to co-ordinate or prepare and to initiate the execution of all plans for the employment of army forces and installations in defense against enemy action in that part of the United States lying within command boundaries. Each defense commander has ground and air troops assigned to him for the purpose of carrying out his missions of operation against the enemy.

(P.2749). That Amagansett Beach is in a theater of operations from a tactical point of view. That tank and drill operations at Amagansett Beach were just as effective after the letter was issued as before. That the same is true of Florida.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2750). That a theater of operations is applicable to the Eastern Defense Command except for that part which applies to administration and supply which has been eliminated, and which is the reason for changing the title. (P.2750). That the administration and supply really pertain to the zone of the interior. The zone of the interior has the job of putting supplies up to the theater of operations and on the front. That the theater of operations is nearer the fighting than is the interior.

(P. 2750). That a determination was made that the supply situation, training activities and things of that kind may be used in the Defense Command more properly part of the zone of the interior than the theater of operations because of the supply functions involved.

(P.2751). That as soon as fighting took place in the part of the interior, it would become military operations.

TESTIMONY OF THOMAS J. DONEGAN, A WITNESS FOR THE PROSECUTION.
RECALLED.

DIRECT EXAMINATION:

(P.2759). That he did not pull Kerling's hair, or slap him, but did talk rough to him, and told him he considered him to be a dirty rat. That he was alone with witness at that time.

(P.2760). That he remembers the time when Drayton and Kerling and himself were in his office, that he talked rough to Kerling but did not slap him.

CROSS-EXAMINATION:

(P.2761). That he did not go out with Kerling alone, after Kerling claimed he, witness, had struck Kerling.

(P.2761). (At this point the prosecution closed its rebuttal.)

(P.2761). (At this point, it was stipulated by counsel that so far as the evidence goes, the case was closed.).

NEW YORK, N.Y.

JUNE 20, 1942

I, RICHARD QUIRIN, having been told by H. G. Foster and B. F. Wiand that they are Special Agents of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, make the following statement voluntarily and of my own free will. I have received no threats or promises and I realize that this statement may be used as evidence in a Court of Law.

The following questions were put by Special Agent B. F. Wiand.

Q. Richard, where were you born?

A. I was born in Berlin, Germany the 26th of April, 1908.

Q. Have you any brothers or sisters?

A. No. I have no brothers or sisters.

Q. State the name of your parents.

R. G. Foster
A. My father's name was Ernst, and my mother's name was Helen.

Q. Did you attend the public schools in Germany?

A. I attended public school for about 8 years.

Q. Where did you study?

A. In Berlin and Hanover.

Q. When you completed your 8 years of public school, what did you then do?

A. I went to work in a factory. I was a mechanics helper and after that I worked a year on a farm. From that place I came to America.

Q. Do you know the name of that factory, and how long did you work there?

A. I worked there over 3 years in the factory. It was a machine shop in Hanover. Its name was Schultz and they were making threshing machines and machines used for farming.

Q. You state that you came to the United States shortly after you quit working on the farm?

A. Yes.

R. Quirin

Q. Were your father and mother living at this time?

R.A. *Foster*

A. No. My father died when I was 9 years of age, and my mother died when I was 14 years of age. *is still living at Berlin 65 Milwaukee str.*

Q. Do you recall the date you sailed from Germany coming to the United States?

A. Yes. It was the 17th of October 1927. I sailed from Bremen on the SS YORK to New York.

R.A.

Foster
Q. What was your father's occupation?

A. He was a machinist.

Q. Did you pay your own way to the United States?

A. Yes.

Q. And who were you coming to see?

A. My uncle Ernst Wigleb. He lived in Schenectady. I don't know the number.

Q. Did you secure employment after you arrived in the United States?

A. Yes. I worked as a tinsmith's helper for a few weeks and after that I got a job with the General Electric Company in Schenectady.

Q. (by Agent Foster) Was it in the main plant?

A. Yes.

Q. And what was your job?

A. With the maintenance crew.

Q. Did you go around through the various parts of the factory and repair machines?

A. No - well my job was at this particular building. But sometimes I had to go to get tools or iron from other parts of the plant.

Q. (by Agent Wland) You state you went to work here about 1927?

A. Yes.

Q. How long were you employed by the General Electric Company?

A. About three years.

*R.A.
R. Quinn*

Q. And why did you leave their employ?

A. I was laid off because of lack of work.

Q. Then what did you do?

A. I went to New York and I had odd jobs here and I took to painting. I worked there several years at different jobs on and off. At times I was out of work. I worked for Mr. Simon and a Mr. Feraystadt for a short time.

Where did you next find employment?

A. Well - after that I had various other jobs but only for short times. I can't recall all these jobs.

Q. Did you work for any other company in New York?

A. No. Not a big company. It was all private bosses, you know. They had some jobs and I worked at one of them 6 weeks or 8 weeks. One of these companies was the Multi-Needle Engineering Corp. near the 59th St. bridge in Long Island.

Q. Can you recall any of the addresses where you lived in New York City while you were here?

A. Yes. 231 E. 86th St.

Q. What year was that?

A. That was shortly before I took this job out at Chappaqua. 1936.

Q. Where did you live when you first came to New York City?

A. At 138th St. between Willis and Brook Avenues. They call it the first elevator building in the Bronx.

Q. Can you recall any other addresses where you lived while in New York City?

A. I lived in Astoria for a while but I can't remember the address.

Q. When did you move to Chappaqua, N.Y. in Westchester County?

A. That was in January or February of 1938. I stayed there until I went to Germany in 1939.

Q. By whom were you employed.

A. Mr. J. W. Rauch.

R. Buisin

Q. And what did you do?

A. I was chauffeur there.

Q. Do you know the nature of Mr. Rauch's business?

A. Well - not exactly. He didn't tell me much about his business. All I know is he had an office here, downtown. When he went to work every morning I took him to the station and took him home from the station. I think it was a cotton business. Sport outfits - like skiing outfits made of cotton and impregnated goods for winter wear, skiing, etc.

Q. Are you married?

A. Yes.

Q. When were you married?

A. In 1936 - in New York City.

Q. What was your wife's maiden name?

A. Ann Sesselmann.

Q. Was she German born?

A. Yes.

Q. (By Agent Foster) When did she come here?

A. In 1930.

Q. Did she have any relatives here?

A. Not that I know of.

Q. Where did she live when you married her?

A. We both lived in New York and at the time I was in Chappaqua she was there with me.

Q. At the time you married her where did she live?

A. On Third Avenue between 85th and 86th Streets.

Q. While you were in the United States did you belong to any clubs or societies of any nature whatsoever?

A. ~~No.~~ I joined the Friends of our Germany I think in 1933 and remained in the org. about 1 year, I wore the party uniform at club meetings. R. A. I resigned because I was German Citizen.

R. Quinn

Q. Did you ever attend any of the meetings of any clubs or societies?

fb - re
K.Q.A. ~~No - but we~~ went to dances and different gatherings in Yorkville,
and the meetings of F. of. u. G. while I was a member.

Q. Did you ever become a citizen of the United States:

A. No. I took out my 1st papers in Schenectady - I think in 1929. I never became a citizen of the United States though.

Q. Did your wife ever become a citizen of the United States?

A. No.

Q. Did she ever take out her 1st papers?

A. That I don't know.

Q. You state that you returned to Germany in the year 1939. Will you give the reason why you returned to Germany at this time?

A. I returned to Germany mainly on account of my wife, because she was too sick here. It was due to homesickness I thought at that time.

Q. When you decided to return to Germany what arrangements did you make in connection with this trip?

A. The German Consul offered me to go back to Germany and they would pay my way and get me a job over there - which I did.

Q. Why did you go to see the German Consul?

A. I went there because I made up my mind to go back with my wife. I heard rumors through friends that some had their way paid back and I inquired about this and they offered to send me back and pay my way and offered to get me a job too. The boat was leaving in July. My wife went back two months before me. I had two months to wait.

Q. I understand then - your wife went to Germany in May you paying her way, and that you went to Germany in July, your way being paid by the German government. Is that correct?

A. Yes. That's right.

Q. What was the name of the boat on which you sailed and the date?

A. The Bremen on the 25th of July 1939.

Q. (By Agent Foster) As a matter of fact. When you went to the German Consulate - do you think the fact that you were a mechanic assisted them

R. Buirin

in deciding to send you back to Germany?

A. It may have been.

Q. Was that point stressed?

A. No. They told me they do pay for fellows who have some kind of trade. That was the understanding.

Q. (By Agent Wiand) At the time you decided to return to Germany in 1939 what was your attitude toward the German Government?

A. Well - I was in favor of it I would say. And I believed that things would become better over there than they had been.

Q. Did you intend to return to the United States? At any time?

A. Not at the time when I left.

Q. At what port did you arrive in Germany?

A. Bremen.

Q. Now state what you did when you arrived in Germany?

A. I was with my mother-in-law whom I had never met before, and about two weeks later I started to work in the plant.

Q. Was your job already arranged for you upon your arrival?

A. Well not the job itself, because they had to find out what I could do and according to that they got the job for me. But the place I was to work was arranged for me.

Q. Did you immediately become a member of the German Labor Front?

A. Yes. It had to be that way because when you take up work you have to be a member of it.

Q. Prior to your return to Germany, did you buy any reimmigration marks known as Rueckwanderer Marks?

A. Yes. \$500 worth in my name.

Q. In what factory were you employed in Germany?

A. Volkswagenwerk in Braunschweig, Germany.

R. Guerin

Q. What type of work did you do in the factory?

A. Tool making.

Q. Was this a large factory, and what did they manufacture?

A. They made cars. It was a new type of car that was being put out, it was known as the people's car.

Q. Was it a big factory?

A. Yes, they employed several thousand people.

Q. Where did you live in Germany?

R.Q.

A. Braunschweig, ^{Frager} Strasse 14.

Q. Does your wife still reside at that address?

A. No, she lives in South Germany with her parents in Kulmbach, Germany.

Q. What is the name of your wife's parents?

A. SESSELMANN. JACOB SESSELMANN.

Q. What is her mother's name?

A. That I don't recall.

Q. What does her father do?

A. He is a farmer.

Q. How long were you employed in Volkswagenwerk?

A. From August, 1939 to April, 1942.

Q. Why did you leave your employment at the Volkswagenwerk?

A. I knew a fellow who worked in Volkswagenwerk by the name of HENRY KAYNER, although I do not know if his last name is correct, and he came to me and told me that he knew a fellow that was looking for a man to go over on a trip to America for the purpose of serving Germany in America.

R. Quinn

- Q. After HENRY told you about this, what did you next do?
- A. We went to Berlin and went to a place which was in the center of the city, Ranta Strasse 5, an apartment and office building, where we saw a man who explained to us the nature of this trip, whose name I do not know, and he asked me if I wanted to come to America.
- Q. Explain what the proposition was that he explained to you concerning your proposed trip to the United States.
- A. He said that if we wanted to come over here and get acquainted with people in order to create some kind of an organization or people that would be against war and fight it and work toward the end of the war, we would go to a place where we would get some training in sabotage. He did not, at the time, mention what it was, but we found out later about it, and said that we would then be sent to America.
- Q. Did you accept this proposition at the time you talked with this person?
- A. Yes.
- Q. With regard to this person who spoke with you in Berlin concerning your proposed trip to this country, do you know, or have you any reason to believe that he was connected with the German Government?
- A. I was not sure what he belonged to, but it was my opinion that he was from the Army.
- Q. Did you receive any further instructions from this person?
- A. He told us to go back to Braunschweig. We stayed there until we received a letter telling us that we were to be on a certain farm on a certain day. That was in the middle of April. I don't know the exact date. After receiving this letter, I went to this farm and there we stayed for about three weeks getting the lessons.
- Q. Where was this farm located?
- A. It is near Berlin.
- Q. What were the names of the individuals who were in charge of you at this farm?

R. Guerin

- A. I did not know any of their names but the instructors were doctors.
- Q. Did anyone go to the farm with you?
- A. Yes, Henry and I went together.
- Q. And, after you arrived, what did you do the first week?
- A. The first week we didn't do anything, just took it easy; conversed in the English language, read American newspapers and magazines, such as the Saturday Evening Post and Life. The latest of these magazines was dated January, 1942.
- Q. After you had spent your first week at this farm, then what was your schedule?
- A. Then we got to know about the explosives, what they were and how they were used.
- Q. Did you experiment with the use of these explosives?
- A. Yes, we experimented.
- Q. Would you describe the type of explosives you were shown and used?
- A. It was a block explosive, yellow color, it was hard, size about 6 inches wide, two inches high and about eight or ten inches long.
- Q. Did you have any other type of explosive showed to you?
- A. Yes, a black explosive. This was the same stuff except it was black and looked like coal. It was in lumps. It was rough and in various size pieces.
- Q. Were you ever told what type of explosive it was with which you were experimenting?
- A. No, not exactly.
- Q. Did they explain to you the precautions to be taken in handling these explosives?
- A. They explained to us that it was very stable and that nothing could happen to it. You could saw it or drill holes into it and it wouldn't go off.

R. Quirin

Q. Did you actually use some of this explosive in your experiments?

A. Yes, I blew up a stump once with it. I took a detonator, attached a fuse to that, put the detonator in the block of explosive, then I tied this whole thing to the stump and set a match to the fuse.

Q. Were you given instructions as to a safe length with reference to the fuse?

A. Yes, a safe length was told me about a yard.

Q. Were you given any instructions in the handling of these detonator caps?

A. Yes, they were very dangerous and that we should be very careful and not monkey around with them.

Q. What was the main use to which you were expected to put this explosive?

A. As a cutting charge.

Q. When you say cutting charge, what do you mean?

A. I mean cut up steel rails and things like that.

Q. What did they tell you in the way of explaining how to set a cutting charge?

A. They told us that two pounds would be sufficient to cut a railroad rail.

Q. Did they give you any other instructions as to cutting charges?

A. Not exactly, they showed us this one way, and if you ever needed it for anything else, we could take some of that explosive and use it according to the amount you had to use to cut a railroad rail.

Q. Were the only explosives you ^{P.B. ~~used~~} ~~owned~~ the black lumps and the yellow blocks?

A. The black lumps we did not use at all, we used the yellow blocks.

Q. Did you use any other fuse besides the safety fuse?

A. No, we didn't.

Q. Did you use anything to detonate these explosives besides detonating caps?

R. Quinn

A. No.

Q. When the only things you used in the way of explosives were black lumps and yellow blocks, safety fuses and detonating caps?

A. Yes. We later learned something about time devices.

Q. What instructions, if any, did you receive in connection with timing devices?

A. We received some instructions about that in fixing up a watch and using the finger of the watch as a circuit attached to batteries and detonating the explosives by an electrical means. They also showed us some regular timing devices which were all ready, the only thing you had to do was to apply a detonator cap and set the clock. They also told us about using water in a cup with a hole in the bottom of the cup but I do not remember exactly how it works.

Q. Did you receive any instructions in the use of incendiary devices?

A. Yes. They told us to use gasoline or any inflammables and use the fuse for setting off the fire.

Q. During the time you were on this farm, what instructions did you receive in connection with the type of objects you were to sabotage?

A. If we had the chance to find places which made any kind of armaments, we could use these explosives.

Q. In what way?

A. By putting the place out of work for a time by cutting down power lines or tying up traffic by cutting rails on railroads.

Q. Then, I understand you to state that your acts of sabotage were to be directed against any plant engaged in the manufacture of war materials and also transportation facilities, is that correct?

A. Yes.

Q. Did you receive any instructions in the use of sand or abrasive in gears and oil boxes, and if so, give the instructions that you received?

R. Guerin

- A. Yes, we were told that we could put sand into oil boxes on railroad cars and engines and cripple them that way.
- Q. Were you ever instructed to obtain employment in a national defense plant and commit an act of sabotage in the place where you were working?
- A. No, we were not instructed to do anything like that in the plant in which we might get a job.
- Q. With reference to this farm where you were trained, was this used by any part of the German Army?
- A. Yes, I was told that this place was used for training grounds for the Army.
- Q. What part of the Army?
- A. Pioneer troops.
- Q. What does a pioneer troop do in the German Army?
- A. They build bridges and are in front of the fighting troops to pave the way for them or take out mines from mine fields and stuff like that.
- Q. What were your instructions as given you at the farm, which you were to use when you arrived in the United States?
- A. In addition to the sabotage work, I was instructed to find people that were against war and would work toward that end and create some kind of an organization which would fight against the war.
- Q. Will you describe a typical day on the farm while you were there?
- A. We got up in the morning, we had exercises first, then we had breakfast, and we sat down and read English papers and magazines, and then we talked in English among ourselves. We spoke in English to know English better. Then we had rest again, playing games, and had lunch. In the afternoon sometimes we would go out for bike rides or we would sit around and exchange ideas as to what to do when we got into America. They gave ideas to accustom yourself to your surrounding and try to find people who would listen to you and get them to believe against this war, and see what these people would be willing to do to help. All during this time though we received instructions in the use of explosives.

P. Quinn

Cr. 334-178 17 Dec 49

Gu. Hooper

I don't ~~know~~
know just
What arrangements
were made on
this, but believe
we should get
the Rec. back
eventually FILE

WZ
not sure. WZ

Q. How many men were at this farm when you were there, not including your instructors?

P.A.

those first names I remember.

A. There were seven men. They all appeared to be the same as I was.

Q. Do you know the full names of any of these men?

P.A.

A. The only one whose name I know is HENRY KAYNER. *Pete, Burger, George, Asch*

Q. What were the names of the other men in addition to HENRY KAYNER?

A. GEORGE, PETE, ERICH, BILL and HERMAN. Most of the time George, Pete, Henry and I were together and had little to do with the other fellows. We were supposed to be together on this trip and that was the reason why we always kept together.

Q. The reason, then, for these persons being at this farm was to be trained in sabotage work to be performed in the United States when they arrived?

A. Yes.

Q. At the time you were arrested you had in your possession a Social Security card and a Selective Service Registration card. Where did you get these cards and explain why they were given to you?

A. I got them at the farm and they were given to me by my instructors. They told me we had to have them. They were already filled out when I got them and I signed my name on it, which name I signed as RICHARD QUINTAS.

Q. During the time you were on this farm, were plans formulated as to the names that you were to use, and were you instructed what to do in the event you were arrested?

A. No I was not instructed. I decided to use the name of RICHARD QUINTAS which I made up myself.

Q. At the time you were arrested, you stated that you were a Portugese, were you instructed that you were to use any certain story or name?

A. We received no instructions what to do if arrested other than not to talk but we discussed among ourselves what we would do and what story we would tell and I decided I would say I was from Chicago and that I was born in Portugal.

R. Quinn

- Q. When you were at the farm, did your instructors tell you that you were coming to the United States?
- A. Yes, they told me we were going by way of submarine to the United States and would be put ashore there, which place was not fixed.
- Q. While you were at the farm, did you have an interview or conversation with anyone concerning the future care of your wife and child?
- A. Yes, I was told that my wife would get money every month to live on.
- Q. How much?
- A. Three hundred marks and they made out a written statement of this; also in the event something happened to me, they would take care of my family.
- Q. And if you became permanently injured, you would get a pension, right?
- A. Yes.
- Q. What was your salary while you worked for Volkswagenwerk?
20. A. 350 to ⁴⁰⁰~~400~~ marks a month.
- Q. Can you fix a date when you left the farm where you were trained for your work in the United States for the German Government.
- A. I think it was the sixth of May. I was supposed to be back at Berlin on the 12th.
- Q. Where did you go?
- A. I went home to Braunschweig and took my wife to her parents in Kulmbach.
- Q. You state you have one child, please give her name and date of birth.
- A. ROSEMARIE; 4th of October, 1940.
- Q. After you had taken your wife to her parents, then where did you go and did you tell your wife what you were going to do?
- A. No, the understanding was that I was not to tell anybody, not even my wife. I stayed there for a week with my wife and I went back to Berlin and got there about May 12. I reported to the man I originally saw at Ranta Strasse 5. He told me to wait there, he would tell us when we were to leave.

R. Quirin

Q. At that time, were you, George, Pete, and Henry in Berlin?

A. Yes.

Q. Were you given any money?

A. Yes, we had money to live on in Berlin and he gave me \$4,000 to come over here when we left.

Q. Was this money to be used by you alone, or was it for you and Henry?

A. It was for Henry and me, and we had some pocket money besides that.

Q. How much money altogether did you have?

A. I had about \$300 besides the money belt which was supposed to be \$4000. I do not know how much money Henry had.

Q. At any time while you were in Germany, was anyone designated in your group as a leader in your group of four men? Were you ever given any instructions with whom you were to work in the United States and the place where you were to reside?

A. The understanding was that Henry and I would be together in New York, not knowing what the others were to do. We were to split up. No definite instructions were made to that extent. *that George was to be leader.*

Q. Can you fix a date when you left Berlin proceeding to the United States?

A. I can't fix the exact date but remained in Berlin from the 12th for about two weeks when we were taken to France to get on the submarine.

Q. When you left Berlin, was your group furnished with any explosives?

A. Yes, we had four boxes.

Q. Describe these boxes.

A. They were wooden boxes and the size of each was about 18 inches wide and about that high, and a yard long.

Q. How much did these boxes weigh?...

R. Quinn

- A. They were different weights, I would say one weighed about 70 pounds and the others about half as much, although they were the same size.
- Q. Now describe your trip from Berlin from the time you got on the submarine and who went along with you?
- A. The one fellow we dealt with and us four went on the train to Paris, where we stayed overnight in a hotel, and from there went on to a port where the submarine was anchored at the side of a ship, which was tied up at a pier.
- Q. Did you have these boxes of explosives with you at the time?
- A. Yes, they were on the train and they were taken at this point by a car to the submarine.
- Q. Then, what time did you board the submarine for your departure to the United States?
- A. It was either on the 28th or 29th, I think, between 8 and 9 o'clock at night.
- Q. Did you receive any final instructions from the man who accompanied you from Berlin?
- A. No, not exactly, there was only a farewell and that was all.
- Q. Did you take any clothes with you when you got on the submarine?
- A. Yes, I had my own civilian clothes and I was also furnished with a soldier's uniform to wear on the ship.
- Q. Describe this uniform.
- A. Gray pants and coat, the type that soldiers use for work, and a gray cap. The cap was a regular Army cap having an eagle and a triangle. Between the eagle and the triangle there was a button, which we call the Cokardee.
- Q. Under whose command were you during the time you were on the submarine?
- A. We obeyed orders from the Captain.

R. Quirin

Q. At any time during the trip, did you have a discussion with the Captain of the submarine regarding your duties in the United States?

A. No.

Q. Did he instruct you what to do?

A. He was not supposed to know much, that was what I was told before I got to the submarine. He had orders to put us ashore and that was all he had to do. On the way we were to obey orders because he was going to fix the place where we were to be put ashore.

Q. Aside from the Social Security card, the Selective Service card, and the money with which you were furnished, did you have any other papers, documents, or other secret writings in your possession when you left Germany?

A. No.

Q. How long a period of time did it take you to come to the United States from France?

A. I should say two weeks.

Q. Did you know the name of the port from where you sailed from France on the submarine?

A. I was told it was near Bordeaux but I do not know the place, which was a very small village. No number was on the submarine.

Q. Do you recall on what day you arrived in the United States?

A. Yes, Saturday, the 13th, at around 1:00 A. M.

Q. Where did you land?

A. On Long Island, near East Hampton.

Q. Now, what, in your own words, happened at the time the submarine approached the shore of Long Island?

R. Quinn

- A. When we were told we were near, the Captain told us to get ready, which we did. I was wearing a pair of dark blue swimming trunks with a white belt and dressed in the soldier's uniform, although I left my cap on board the submarine. The submarine came to the surface and about 14 men came out on deck. We came out later. When we came up, there was a rubber boat ready waiting for us and two sailors were in the rubber boat and on to it was fixed a tow line which was hooked to the submarine so it could be pulled back after we had been landed. We stepped into the boat and the Captain wished us good luck and we rowed ashore. The boxes were already in the boat when we got into it. I would say that the submarine was between a half mile and a mile from shore.
- Q. Were you, Henry, George, and Pete all wearing the same type of clothes when you landed on the shore of Long Island?
- A. Yes.
- Q. How many sailors accompanied you during this landing?
- A. Two.
- Q. Did they return to the submarine?
- A. Yes.
- Q. What did you do when you got on shore?
- A. We carried the boxes on shore and changed our clothes. The uniforms were being put in a sack and one fellow took the sack to the boat in order that it might be taken back to the ship. Pete came back right away and said George had talked with a watchman but he said to go on ahead. So, we took the boxes and carried them up further from the beach in a hurry and just buried them there.
- Q. Prior to your landing from the submarine, had you made up your mind as to what you would do with the explosives contained in these boxes?
- A. Yes, we made up our minds to bury them at a place which was to be selected.
- Q. For this purpose then, did you have any tools to be used in burying these boxes?
- A. Yes, we had shovels.
- Q. Describe these shovels.

R. Quinn

A. They were trench shovels, short handles and a cross bar on top of them.

Q. How many boxes did you carry from the boat to the place where you buried them?

A. I carried two.

Q. How many boxes were there?

A. Four.

Q. These were the same boxes you put on the submarine when you departed from France, is that correct?

A. Yes.

Q. Were the uniforms you were wearing taken back to the submarine by the sailors?

A. No, one of the fellows had the sack and was taking it back, and he came back and said that George was talking to a watchman and, therefore, I do not know whether these uniforms were taken back as we planned.

Q. Do you recall whether or not any of your group were wearing these Army caps at the time you landed on the beach?

A. I don't recall that.

Q. Can you state whether or not in your rowing from the submarine to the beach, you lost any of the oars?

A. That may be, but I don't know.

Q. Did anyone meet you on the beach to assist you in landing?

A. No.

Q. After you made the landing, did you change your clothes on the beach?

A. Yes, we changed into our civilian clothes on the beach.

Q. After you had made the landing and changed your clothes on the beach, where did you go?

A. We went up on the beach with the boxes and buried them there and then we walked toward the road and there stayed until all four of us were together.

R. Quinn

A. We kept on walking and walked toward, what seemed to be a village. Some place we sat down and waited until it got a little light and then we made out where to go. We went on to Amagansett, I think it was the next stop to East Hampton, and we waited for a train and got on.

Q. Where did you wait for this train?

A. At the station.

Q. Describe the route you took from the beach to Amagansett.

A. From the beach, there was a road which we hit first. There was shrubbery along this road and we walked along behind it. We then walked across a stretch of land until we hit what seemed to be a farm road. We followed this road which was leading us away from the beach. There we stopped awhile and waited for it to get light and kept on walking along this road until we hit a concrete road. We took this to the left toward New York. There we switched off once more and went through a side road and hit the railroad tracks. We followed the railroad tracks to a little railroad station in Amagansett where we stayed until a train came along.

Q. Had you ever been in this vicinity on Long Island during the time you were in the United States before?

A. No.

Q. Were you acquainted with the vicinity?

A. No I was near that vicinity while fishing once, but I think it was further toward New York. I don't know the stations at all.

Q. Were some of your companions acquainted with this area?

A. Yes, George seemed to know.

Q. What was the condition of the weather on the night you landed?

A. It was very foggy out, you could only see ten or fifteen yards. At times you could see more. In the morning it was nice.

Q. What time was it when you landed?

A. I think it was around one o'clock in the morning, on Saturday, June 13, 1942.

R. Amis

Q. At what time did you leave Amagansett?

A. At about seven o'clock by train.

Q. Did you purchase your tickets in the station, and who paid for them, and what was your destination?

A. Our destination was Jamaica, and George bought all four of them in the station.

Q. Did anyone stop you from the time you left the shore and the time you arrived at the station?

A. No, no one stopped us.

Q. Did you see anyone?

A. No.

Q. After you had buried the boxes and proceeded to the station, at any time did you and your comrades have any discussion about returning for these boxes?

A. Yes, we spoke about getting the boxes sometime but it was not decided upon because after meeting the watchman there we were not sure whether it would turn out all right. So, we just left them there, but there was no definite arrangement as to what we would do with those boxes.

Q. At what time did you arrive in Jamaica and what did you do?

A. I think we arrived in Jamaica around 9:30, and we got off at the station. We separated and each bought a little clothes. I bought a pair of slacks and a shirt right near the Jamaica station in a little store. I put them on and threw my old clothes that were wrapped in a bundle in a waste can.

Q. At the time you were changing clothes on the beach or any time thereafter, did anyone mention to you that they had lost a vest?

A. No.

Q. What arrangements were made for meeting again while you were in Jamaica?

A. Well, that we should be at Grant's Tomb on certain days, on Saturdays and Wednesdays I believe it was.

R. Quinn

- Q. Did you, Henry, Pete and George agree where you were to stay in New York City?
- A. No, we did not. We just split up, two by two. I went with Henry and Pete went with George.
- Q. At what time did you part in Jamaica?
- A. We parted at 9:30, right after we arrived.
- Q. Then what did you do?
- A. Well, Henry and I stayed together and we got on the subway and went over to New York. Then I bought a suitcase at Macy's. We had something to eat and went to the Hotel Martinique, where we registered.
- Q. Under what name did you register at this hotel?
- A. RICHARD QUINTAS from Albany.
- Q. Do you recall the number of the room where you stayed?
- A. No, I don't.
- Q. Since you have been in New York, you and Henry have stayed in the same room together, is that correct?
- A. Yes.
- Q. Were there ever any arrangements made that you and Henry should stay at the Chesterfield?
- A. Yes, I think George mentioned something like that but I didn't want to look around for it. We happened to be at the Pennsylvania Station and this was a close hotel and we just stopped in there, that's all.
- Q. What was the reason you left the Martinique Hotel?
- A. Because it was too expensive and we wanted to find a cheaper room.
- Q. Were you successful in finding a room?

R. Quin

A. Yes, we looked up the papers and went up to 76th Street and took a room there in a rooming house at 149 West 76th Street and we intended to remain there quite sometime.

Q. How did you spend your time during the day?

A. Well, Henry and I were together most of the time. We walked most of the time, stopped in to have something to eat, we went to a show, that's about all.

Q. After you parted in Jamaica, the four of you, when was the next time that you were all together?

A. Last Sunday, we met at Grant's Tomb, the four of us were together. We had made an agreement in Jamaica when we parted that we would meet at Grant's Tomb at 6:00 o'clock in the evening.

Q. What conversation did you have or enter into at this time?

A. Well, we just walked along. We didn't talk much at all except that George said he was going to leave town maybe, but he didn't know what time or when he was going to leave. There was nothing much said. He and Pete left us then.

Q. How long were you together?

A. About a quarter of an hour, that's all.

Q. Did you have any other meetings after the one just mentioned?

A. Yes, Henry and I met Pete several times.

Q. Can you fix the days on which you met him?

A. I recall now that I met Pete on the following day at which time Henry was with me and I am quite sure I met him on Tuesday, June 16, at which time I gave him our new address. I don't remember what we did. He said it was good to be with us because he was all by himself and that is the reason he came to see us so often. We went out and had dinner together and stayed together for a little while in a restaurant and then parted. On Wednesday we met again, June 17, at which time we bought a suit at Rogers Peet and he told us it would be ready on Saturday at three o'clock. We arranged to meet there Saturday, June 20, at three o'clock to get these suits.

R. Quinn

Q. Do you recall the day when Pete gave you his address?

A. I believe it was on Wednesday, June 17, when he gave me his room number and said he was staying at the Governor Clinton Hotel. I think the room was #1421.

Q. During any of these meetings you had with Pete at the time Henry was usually with you, did you discuss or formulate any plans in connection with the instructions you received in Germany before you came to the United States?

A. No, we made no plans at all. When we met, it was for the purpose of getting our minds off of things and just talking; going around and just eating together and then parting. That's all there was to it. We wanted to lay low for awhile.

Q. Did you ever discuss what might happen to you in case you were caught or discovered?

A. Yes, we thought about it. We did discuss what would become of us in case we got caught but we didn't find any definite answer on that, you know.

Q. What did you think about that?

A. Well, we were hoping not to be caught.

Q. When you thought about being caught, what did you think?

A. Well, I thought it would be all over.

Q. Would you consider yourself as a spy in this country?

A. I don't know.

Q. Well, what do you consider yourself?

A. Well, - - nothing in particular.

Q. You were over here to work for Germany, were you not?

A. Yes.

R. Quinn

Q. At the time you entered the United States in the manner in which you did, there was no doubt in your mind but what you were violating the law?

A. No.

Q. Do you consider yourself an agent of Germany?

A. Well, something like that.

Q. As a matter of fact you promised your superiors in Germany that you would carry out their instructions in the United States, is that correct?

A. Yes.

Q. When you left Germany, wasn't it your intention to come to the United States and carry out your instructions?

A. Yes, it was.

Q. Would you have carried out your instructions in the event you had not been apprehended?

K. Br. A. I might have. *I'm not sure*

Q. As a matter of fact, you feel that your loyalty is to Germany, isn't that correct?

A. Yes.

Q. In the event Germany emerged victorious from this war, did you receive any instructions as to what you were to do?

A. No definite instructions, but we were supposed to come back to Germany where I would be given a better job and be well cared for.

K. Br.

- Q. Sometime ago I asked you concerning the training you received with incendiary pencils, do you recall now whether you received any such training?
- A. Yes.
- Q. Will you describe the training that you received in connection with these pencils.
- A. I know you could use them to start a fire with them, but I don't know exactly how it worked any more. I may recall it I don't know.
- Q. Did you experiment with these pencils when you were being trained on the farm, or have them demonstrated to you?
- A. They were shown to us and explained to us, but I did not experiment with them.
- Q. But you did actually see one burn, is that correct?
- A. I did not see one burn.
- Q. In connection with the explosives which you brought with you on the submarine, do you know whether there were any incendiary pencils contained therein?
- A. I did not actually see them put in the boxes, but I was told they were in the boxes.
- Q. In connection with the pencils which you were told would be in these boxes, explain the instructions you received in connection with their use.
- A. You will take the pencil apart and connect it some how so that it would burn through a plate and the acid into another part and then it would ignite.
- Q. At the time you were told about these incendiary pencils, were any suggestions made as to the use to which they were to be put?
- A. To start a fire in some place which was making war materials, such as warehouses, factories, etc.

R. Quinn

- Q. In connection with your instructions relative to these pencils, were you told the length of time that would elapse before the pencil would burst into flame after it was adjusted for use?
- A. They told us the time was very indefinite because it depended on the temperature. Sometimes it might take half an hour, sometimes it might take an hour or even two hours.
- Q. In other words, they told you that these pencils were to be used to sabotage warehouses and factories producing war materials, is that correct?
- A. Yes.
- Q. I show you a vest and I ask you if you have ever seen it before.
- A. Yes, that is my vest.
- Q. Examine this vest and please state how you can identify it as being your vest.
- A. By the color which is brown; there is a tear on the right side near the bottom in the back. There was a cleaning tag on the tip of the vest on the right side which I tore off, and there remains several stitches on the inside of the vest.
- Q. When do you last recall having this vest in your possession?
- A. It was, I believe, in the sack where we had our clothes when we got off the submarine.
- Q. You have previously stated that you changed clothes on the beach after you landed on Long Island, do you recall losing the vest at that time?
- A. I put my clothes on in a hurry and I did not think of a vest at all at the time, and upon seeing this vest, this is the first time I knew that I lost it.
- Q. Did you have a suit that matched this vest?
- A. Exactly.
- Q. Do you recall where this suit was purchased?

R. Quirin

- A. At Crawford's, I think it was on 86th Street.
- Q. Did you buy this suit prior to your return to Germany in 1939?
- A. Yes, I bought it several years before I returned to Germany.
- Q. Can you fix approximately the year when you bought this suit?
- A. Not exactly; I had it, I think, three years.
- Q. Prior to your departure from Germany, were you instructed to obtain some of your clothes which you had purchased in the United States to take with you and to wear at the time you landed in the United States on the submarine?
- A. Yes, we were told to wear our clothes that we had brought from the United States when we came back to Germany in 1939.
- Q. Would you give as your reason for not missing your vest at the time, due to the fact that you became frightened when George was stopped by the watchman on the beach?
- A. Yes, we dressed very hurriedly because we were frightened and afraid we might get caught.
- Q. Did either George, Pete, or Henry ever tell you that they also lost something at the time they landed on the beach?
- A. Yes, I believe George said something about losing a notebook.
- Q. Did he tell you what was in this notebook?
- A. No.
- Q. Did you ever see this notebook?
- A. I don't recall it.
- Q. Do you know anything of the contents of this notebook?
- A. No.
- Q. Prior to your departure from Germany, were you ever given any names of people to contact in the United States, or did you give them the names of any persons that you might contact?
- A. No.

R. Quinn

Q. Since your arrival in the United States on Saturday, June 13, 1942, have you talked to or seen any of your old acquaintances in this country?

A. No.

Q. Have you any relatives living in the United States at the present time?

A. Yes, I had, but they are dead.

Q. And, their names were?

A. ERNEST WIGLEB. His wife's first name was EMMA, of Schnectady, New York, but buried in Albany, New York.

Q. At the time you were in Germany, were you instructed how to make incendiary material and where to obtain the same?

A. Yes, we were taught something about this, which I have forgotten.

Q. Where did they expect you to secure this type of material?

A. Most of it could be bought in drug stores.

I have read this statement consisting of 29 pages, and have had the same read to me. I have signed each page of this statement and state that the same is true to the best of my knowledge and belief. This statement was given by me on June 20, 21, and 22, 1942.

Richard Quirin
RICHARD QUIRIN

R. Quirin,

WITNESSES:

B. F. Wiand
B. F. WIAND, Special Agent
Federal Bureau of Investigation
United States Department of Justice
607 U. S. Court House
Foley Square, New York, New York

H. G. Foster
H. G. FOSTER, Special Agent
Federal Bureau of Investigation
United States Department of Justice
607 U. S. Court House
Foley Square, New York, New York

New York, N. Y.,
June 23, 1942.

I, HENRY HARM HEINCK, make the following voluntary statement to R. L. Johnson and C. H. Stanley whom I know to be Special Agents of the Federal Bureau of Investigation. No threats or promises have been made to me and I make this statement of my own free will. This statement is in addition to a nine page statement made by me on June 21, 1942 and is to add to and correct information given by me at that time. The nine page statement which I made and signed on June 21, 1942 is true and correct except in so far as it conflicts with the information in this statement.

I finished public school in Hamburg, Germany in 1922 and thereafter continued my training by serving an apprenticeship in the machine shops of the Hamburg-American Steamship Lines in Hamburg, Germany. I finished my apprenticeship in 1926 and then started working as an oiler and machinist's helper on the S.S. Westphalia of the Hamburg-American Lines.

After having jumped ship at the Port of New York in 1926, I immediately got employment at a Thompson's Restaurant on Columbus Circle in New York City. I worked at Thompson's Restaurant for about two weeks and then obtained employment at a Blue Kitchen Restaurant at 51st Street and Broadway in New York City. I was employed by the Blue Kitchen for about two years and then got a job with the Park Central Hotel as a bus boy where I worked for around six months. I was then employed at 1088 Park Avenue as a handyman for a little over a year. After this I worked for about a year at a building located at 250 West 94th Street as handyman and elevator operator. It was at this place that I met my wife.

My wife came to the United States in 1928 and she later took out her first papers, but never became a citizen. I have at no time taken out my first papers since I jumped ship.

After I married, my wife and I worked at Cedarhurst, L.I. for a family, by the name of KEMP. I was employed as a chauffeur and my wife as housekeeper. We remained here for about eight months.

I also was employed for about four or five years at the American District Telegraph Company and the Manhattan Engineering Company as machinist and lathe hand. I was employed here off and on for several months. Later I was working for the International Projector Company for a short time and then with the Ackels Camera Company for about eight or nine months where I was employed as an all-round mechanic. After leaving this job, I then started working for the American Machine and Tool Manufacturers, which is a branch of the C.L. Norden Company. I worked here from about July 1938 until I left the United States for Germany around March 1939.

In 1934 I joined the German-American Bund in New York City. I was what is known as an Ordnungs Dienst, which is similar to an usher. The

Heinrich Heinck

Bund held regular meetings, once each week, but I only attended about once a month. The meetings were held at the Yorkville Casino; Turn Hall, on the corner of Lexington Avenue and 86th Street; Ebling's Casino, 156th Street and Third Avenue, Bronx, N.Y. During the meetings I wore a uniform consisting of black riding breeches, white shirt, black boots, black tie and wide black belt. During the time I was a member of the Bund, Dr. SCHNURCH was leader of the Bund in America. Part of this time, ANTON HAEGELE was one of the local leaders of the Bund. During my connection with the Bund, we were lectured to on National Socialism and also about the ~~superiority~~ of the German race. The heads of the Bund then also spoke to us about the reasons why the German people in America should return to Germany. They pointed out that the Germans should be one big family and remain Germans. They told us not to forget the old country.

During my connection with the Bund in New York City, one of the main speakers was WALTER KAPPE. KAPPE was publisher of the Bund newspaper which is called ~~Wockeuf~~ und Beobachter. I first met KAPPE in New York City around 1935 and on at least one occasion, KAPPE came to my home with some other friends, two of whom were WILLIE REINTELMANN and FRITZ REINSH. REINTELMANN and REINSH were also members of the German-American Bund and later returned to Germany. I was a member of the Bund until sometime in 1935 when they told us only citizens could join. They told us that they had orders from Germany to only take citizens. Thereafter I attended some of the Bund parties, but was not carried as a regular member.

After this, I joined the D.A.B. in New York City. I did not attend any meetings, but only joined because I felt that if I paid my dues I would be in good standing with the Party if I ever returned to Germany. At that time, FRITZ ZIEKLIN was the head of the D.A.B. I continued to pay my dues until I left the United States in March of 1939.

While working at the American Machine and Tool Manufacturers, I met ALFRED SCHNEIDER. Somehow SCHNEIDER must have gotten word that the German Labor Front would help pay our expenses back to Germany and would give us a good job when we returned. SCHNEIDER suggested that we go to the German Consulate and contact a man there and make arrangements. At the German Consulate, we talked with a man and he sent us to the Robert C. Meyer Company, which was located on Broadway just across from the Hamburg-American Steamship Line office. At the Robert C. Meyer Company, we left our money and received a slip of paper which we took to the Hamburg-American Lines and our tickets were already made out.

After my arrival in Germany, the German Labor Front gave me a job in a branch of the Volkswagenwerk in Braunschweig, Germany. The Volkswagenwerk is operated by the German Labor Front. Shortly after I arrived in Braunschweig, Germany, I joined the N.S.D.A.P. (The National Socialist Party). This was in March of 1939 and I paid my dues regularly. I was employed with the Volkswagenwerk until I entered the school in connection with coming to America for the purpose of doing sabotage work in April of 1942.

In January 1942, WALTER KAPPE, whom I had met in New York City when

Fritz Reinsh

KAPPE was publisher of the Bund newspaper, came to Braunschweig and spoke at a meeting as a representative of the A.O. (Auslands Organisation). Arrangements for this meeting were made by KURT LAAS, who was in charge of the tools in the Volkswagenwerk plant where I worked and the meeting was held for the purpose of bringing together people who had formerly lived in America and Canada. The meeting was attended by about 35 or 40 men and women. KAPPE was introduced by LAAS as being from the Auslands and this was the first time I had seen KAPPE since I left New York. KAPPE talked for about 20 to 30 minutes during which time he spoke of the war and pointed out that the people from America should be satisfied and that times would be better after the war. KAPPE recognized me and came over after the meeting to shake hands with everybody. I talked to KAPPE about my family and about old times in America. RICHARD QUERIN was also present at this meeting and heard KAPPE speak.

About a month or two after this meeting, KURT LAAS came to my home one Sunday and asked if I would like to go back to America and do something for Germany. He told me that WALTER KAPPE had given him my name as being a person who might help Germany. LAAS either told me or gave me to understand definitely that the work that I was to do in America was sabotage.

After I talked with LAAS was the first time I had talked with RICHARD QUERIN, now known to me as DICK QUINTAS as set out in my original statement.

I received the typed unsigned letter mentioned in my original statement and took it to the personnel officer at the factory, whose name is PHILIP and then reported to Quince Gut Farm on or about April 1, 1942. Quince Gut Farm is located near Berlin and the nearest railway station is Brandenburg. I came from Braunschweig to Brandenburg by train. I had been instructed to take a street car from the railway station and to catch a street car that makes connection with the Quince Lake bus. After having ridden the street car to the end of the line and while waiting for the bus, RICHARD QUERIN got off the street car and he and I rode the Quince Lake bus to Quince Gut Farm together.

After getting off the Quince Lake bus, it is necessary to walk about 15 minutes before arriving at Quince Gut Farm. I believe this Farm is located about one hour's walk from Brandenburg. The Quince Gut Farm is located on the edge of Quince Lake. This Farm was previously owned by a Jewish fellow who operated as a shoe manufacturer in Germany. The Farm was surrounded by a stone and wire fence and we entered through an iron gate. It had the appearance of an ordinary well kept farm. After having passed through the gate, we drove up a driveway about a half a City block long and arrived at the main farm house.

When we walked up to the house, we were met by WALTER KAPPE mentioned above and the caretaker of the farm whose name I do not recall and they showed QUINTAS and I our room. We found that only one member of the school which was later organized had preceded us at arriving at Quince Gut Farm and we then met him. His name was SCOTTY.

Heinrich Himmler

The main farm house was a two story building with a cellar. The house probably had about twelve rooms and the caretaker and his family occupied about half the house and the personnel of the school, including KAPPE and instructors occupied the other half of the house. In about the middle of the house was a living room and dining room where we took our meals, read books and talked. The members of my group had a room at the front of the main farm house and as the sun came up on that side of the building, I believe this was the east side of the farm. Immediately south of the main farm house and only a few steps away from there, there was located a small farm house which was a one story building and which was occupied by some farmers working on the farm. About fifty feet south and possibly a little southeast of the small farm house there was a hot house in which greens and flowers and other vegetable were growing. About 50 or 60 feet east of the hot house there was a two story building. The second floor of this building was used as a class room and laboratory; the first floor was a garage and store room. About 70 feet east of this class room and laboratory there was another farm house. This was probably the barn as I heard cows and pigs, but I did not visit this place at any time.

About 60 or 70 feet southwest of the laboratory and about the same distance southeast of the hot house, there was a gymnasium; this was a two story building. On the second floor of the building, there was a room where a number of bicycles were stored and another vacant room. On the ground floor, there was located a gymnasium where we did sporting with handle bars and took exercises. Southwest of the hot house, there was a testing ground and rifle range about 1000 feet in diameter where explosives and incendiaries were tested during the course we took. There was also a rifle range on this testing ground, but no one used the rifle range while we were receiving our training at the Quince Gut Farm.

West of the main building, there was a small garden and a walk leading to Quince Lake, which was about 15 or 20 steps west of and behind the main building. About 25 or 30 yards north of the main building, there was a pistol range. We did not use this pistol range for training purposes but we fired on the range once or twice while the Doctors were using the range. North of the pistol range and in the same general vicinity was a lawn which we used for playing soccer and other sports. We took our morning setting up exercises on this field. All of the buildings located on this Farm were built of stone.

As above mentioned, the first class member that I met after arriving at Quince Gut Farm was the individual known to me as SCOTTY and whose correct name I did not learn. SCOTTY remained in the class for about ~~4~~ or ~~three~~ days, but was not liked by the other members of the class and was dropped. SCOTTY was about 36 to 38 years of age, about 5' 8" tall, weighed about 140 pounds, had light blond hair combed straight back, was single and his conversation indicated he was very fond of the women. His face was wrinkled and his complexion was light. His general appearance was Scottish. His conversation indicated that while he was in the United States, he travelled and sold ties. He did not indicate what part of the United States

Heinrich Frink

he was in, but I do not believe he was in New York and his conversation generally indicated he was probably in the middle western part of the United States. From his conversation, I believe he returned to Germany from the United States in about 1938 or 1939. He had been working in Hamburg, Germany was an office worker and bookkeeper.

I cannot recall the exact date that I arrived at Quince Gut Farm for this school, but I believe it was around the first of April 1942. All of the members of the class, who will be hereinafter mentioned, arrived at the Quince Gut Farm the same day I did, except ERNST ZUBER who arrived the second day. ERNST ZUBER was a soldier and he was called out of the army to attend this school. I believe he was a Private and was assigned to the food dispensary in the army. I do not believe he was on the front, but believe he was located in Germany when he was called to Germany. He was quiet and did not have much to say. He was about 36 to 38 years of age, about 5' 5" tall, weighed 135 to 140 pounds, had blond hair and lived in Germany. He did not mention the specific location, but from the German he spoke, I believe he was from the vicinity of the Rhineland. ZUBER did not speak good English and I do not know how long he was in the United States. I believe he returned to Germany from the United States in about 1937 or 1938. From his conversation, I believe he lived in Brooklyn, N.Y. while he was in the United States. ZUBER was single. He indicated that he belonged to the German-American Bund in Ridgewood, Brooklyn, N. Y.

Another one of the class members who reported the same day I did was known to me as JERRY SWENSEN. I don't think this was his correct name and I do not recall having heard him called by any other name. He has the general appearance of a big Swede, but he is actually a German. SWENSEN went through the entire school and was supposed to come to the United States with my group. He was to be the fifth man in this group. He went to Paris, France and to Lorient, France, but he contracted a venereal disease and it was necessary for him to return to Paris and enter the hospital and he did not come to the United States on this trip. I believe, however, that he will come to the United States in the next group. SWENSEN is about 30 years of age, about 6' tall or possibly over 6' and his hair is dark blond. He has a light complexion and he is a husky, muscular, strong individual. He weighs about ~~175~~ 180 pounds. He was single and I believe that his home was in the lower Rhineland. He at one time told me the name of the town in the lower Rhineland from which he came, but I cannot recall the name of the town. He indicated he was in the United States for about 15 years and said that he travelled all over the United States as a farmer, hunter, trapper and fisher. He also mentioned that he had been in Canada as a hunter, trapper and fisher. He talked freely about his experiences in the United States and mentioned several states that he had been in. He said that he had never been in New York. SWENSEN said he had never been in any Germany organizations in the United States and never associated with Germans in the United States or Canada. I do not know what his occupation was in Germany. When he left us in Lorient, France, he told us that he would probably come over to the United States later and that he would see us.

In addition to the above three members who did not come to the

Heinrich Jirsch

United States, there were two groups of four attending this school and we were designated to come to the United States. The group in which I was assigned included GEORGE JOHN DASCH alias DAVIS, who was the leader of my group; PETER BURGER; RICHARD "DICK" QUERIN also known as QUINTAS and myself.

GEORGE JOHN DASCH was from Bavaria, Germany. He formerly resided in the United States. DASCH was a salesman in the United States. He spoke very good English and I believe he was in the United States for a number of years. He indicated he was familiar with the English spoken in the southern part of the United States and that he was very familiar with New York and the vicinity. I believe he returned to Germany from the United States about 1937 or 1938, but it is possible that he returned later. DASCH is about 38 years old, 5' 8" tall, weighs about 150 pounds, has black hair which is beginning to turn grey, has a medium complexion and is of a slender build. He dresses well and has a handsome sporty appearance. He is married and he at one time told me that his wife attempted to return to Germany and was interned in Bermuda. DASCH was appointed leader of our group in the United States by WALTER KAPPE. DASCH seemed to be quite an intelligent man and was given the instructions for our group.

The second member of my group was PETER BURGER. BURGER'S home is in Wurzburg, a south German town and he told me that his wife lives there with his parents. He also told me that he was a reporter or a writer for some kind of paper in Germany. He at one time mentioned that he had had some trouble with a Party member in Germany, but he did not go into the details. I do not know how long he stayed in the United States, nor when he returned to Germany, but he spoke English slowly and clearly with an accent. He at one time said he had worked in a Catholic Monastery in the United States, the location of which I do not know. He also said he worked as a machinist in Chicago. He was not familiar with New York. I believe he was living in Berlin in an apartment with his wife just before he entered the school. BURGER is about 35 to 36 years of age, 5' 6" tall, weighs about 140 pounds and has dark hair. He is full faced and dresses nicely.

RICHARD QUERIN also known to me as DICK QUINTAS was the fourth member of our group. He was employed in the Volkswagenwerk at Braunschweig, Germany with me and had returned from the United States to Germany in 1939 about the same time that I did. He speaks English with a slight accent and has told me that he lived in the United States about 12 or 13 years and he worked in New York as a painter and also worked in Chicago. He was a member of the German-American Bund in New York for a short time and indicated he was not active. He was a member of the N.S.D.A.P. in Braunschweig. He worked as a machinist in Volkswagenwerk. He is about 35 to 36 years old, weighs about 165 pounds, has grey hair turning white and is of a slender build. He has a wife and one child in Braunschweig, Germany.

The second group of four who later ^{left for} ~~came to~~ the United States consisted of EDDIE KELLY, group leader; HERMAN NEUBAUER; HERBERT HAUKE and BILLY THOMAS.

I am not sure that EDDIE KELLY is the correct name of the group leader, but it is the only name I knew him under. KELLY is 34 to 35 years old, 5' 5"-6" tall, weighs about 150 pounds and has dark blond hair which he combs back and parts on the left side. He has an American hair cut and a light complexion and speaks good English. He dresses well and is married. I am not sure, but from conversation of the groups, I got the impression that his wife is in New York City. His German home is in Weisbaden, Germany. He spoke good English with a slight accent and I judge he had been in the United States for about fifteen years. I think he had been in the restaurant business in Chicago and in New York City. WALTER KAPPE appointed him as leader of the second group. He was a member of the N.S.D.A.P. in Germany and I believe he is a good German.

The second member of KELLY'S group was HERMAN NEUBAUER. NEUBAUER is a cook by profession and he indicated that he worked in a restaurant in Florida. Before he entered the school, he worked in Faehrhaus on Alster Lake near Hamburg, Germany. He indicated he spent most of his time in America in Chicago and lived there for some time and where he was a member of the German-American Bund. I believe he returned to Germany from the United States in about 1938 or 1939. He is married and his wife is now in Hamburg, Germany with his parents. His wife is from the United States. I believe NEUBAUER'S wife is an American girl as she spoke very good English. NEUBAUER himself speaks English with a strong accent. NEUBAUER is about 34 years old, 5' 8"-9" tall, weighs 165 to 170 pounds, has dark brown hair and has a small scar on one side of his face near the temple. His build is muscular and husky. He is a neat dresser. He said he formerly wore a moustache, but was clean shaven when I last saw him.

The third member of KELLY'S group was HERBERT or HERBIE HANK. He was born in Stetten near Danzig, Germany. He said that he came to the United States when he was 5 or 6 years old and attended school in the United States. He told me he is a citizen of the United States and that he lived in Chicago. He is an optician by profession and worked at this in Chicago. I believe he had just returned to Germany from the United States when this class was formed or that he had been there for a short time. He said that he returned from the United States to Germany by way of Mexico and Japan and was able to run the blockade and landed somewhere in France. He told me he had received a decoration from the German Government for having run the blockade. I don't know what type decoration he received as he said he left it at home. HANK is about 28 to 30 years old, about 5' 8" tall, weighs about 170 pounds, has dark hair which he combs straight back, medium complexion and is good looking. He spoke English without accent, but did sometimes mix German words with his English and when speaking German, he sometimes mixed English words with his German. He is single and is of muscular, stocky build.

The fourth member of KELLY'S group was known to me as BILL or BILLY THOMAS. THOMAS formerly lived in Berlin, Germany and had lived in Chicago and New York City in the United States. I have heard him mention Ridgewood and Brooklyn, N. Y. He is single and speaks English with a German accent. He is about 5' 6" tall, weighs about 150 pounds, has dark hair,

Heinrich Heind

dark complexion and is of medium build. He indicated that he left the United States in about 1937 or 1938, but I do not know how long he had lived in this country. I associated with THOMAS very little and he was with KELLY most of the time.

There were ~~three~~⁴ individuals in this class who did not speak English and who did not associate with the groups who were to come to the United States. They had separate rooms in the farm house and I do not believe that they were coming to the United States as they did not speak or understand English. One of these individuals was known to me as Dr. MUELLER; the second was known to me as Dr. WILLOWCHEWSKY and the ~~third~~² individual's name I do not remember. H.H. H.A.

H.H. There was another individual who was teaching gymnastics at the school and who was supposed to receive the training and come to the United States. This individual was known as BILL DEMPSEY. When the school was originally formed, DEMPSEY and I and ERNST ZUBER were supposed to come to the United States in one group. The plans were changed, however, when DEMPSEY left the school and when I objected to not being sent over with QUINTAS who was well known to me.

BILL DEMPSEY is a trainer of prize fighters and he left the school after about one week and said that he was going to train a fighter whose bout was supposed to be in Stuttgart. I am not sure, but I believe the fighter that DEMPSEY was to train was a middle weight. DEMPSEY was supposed to be in charge of another group. DEMPSEY said that he had been in the United States and had lived in New York during the first World War. While in New York, he was a trainer of prize fighters and mentioned having given them massages and rub-downs. He appeared to be familiar with New York fighters and discussed them at length. I do not know when DEMPSEY returned to Germany from the United States, but have heard him say he was in Germany when HITLER came into power. When DEMPSEY left the school, he said "I'll see you boys over there". While he was at the school, he talked of starting a paint shop in New York or vicinity and indicated that this was to be a front for his activities in behalf of Germany. DEMPSEY was our physical instructor before he left the school and after he left DR. SCHULZ took these duties over.

DEMPSEY is about 45 years of age, 5' 8"-9" tall, weighs about 165 pounds, had brown hair, was of medium complexion and his skin was somewhat wrinkled from age. He was well built, broad shouldered, husky and muscular. He spoke very good English and from this I believe he was in the United States for some years. I am not sure, but got the impression that DEMPSEY was single. DEMPSEY had some teeth missing and I believe they were uppers. As best I remember, he also had a lower tooth which was gold or gold crowned which was noticeable when he talked.

The instructors and heads of the school, other than BILL DEMPSEY, were WALTER RAPPE, DR. KOENIG and DR. SCHULZ. There was another man known

to me as REINHOLD BART. BART seemed to be the bookkeeper and ~~body guard~~ ^{H.H.} for KAPPE and he addressed the class on one occasion. DR. SCHULZ and DR. KOENIG were each about 28 to 30 years old. SCHULZ was about 5' 5" tall, weighed 145 to 150 pounds, had dark hair and he spoke no English. Dr. KOENIG was about 5' 9" tall, weighed about 145 pounds, had thin blond hair. He did not speak English to us, but indicated he speaks a little English. Both the Doctors live in Berlin, Germany.

WALTER KAPPE appeared to be the head of the school and was in complete charge of the organization and running of the school. He was not at the school during the entire time, but always visited the school on week-ends. He associated with the men in the class and addressed the class on a few occasions. KAPPE is about 38 to 40 years of age, 5' 8" tall, weighs about 200 pounds and is a very fat man with a big belly. He has blond hair which is very thin. His complexion is light and he has a fat face. KAPPE is married and I believe his wife is in Stuttgart. KAPPE has two or three children who are now in Stuttgart. I know that KAPPE is well known in the United States.

REINHOLD BART was from Stuttgart, Germany. He speaks English with an accent. He is apparently well educated and from his lecture I believe he has some technical knowledge. He wears rimless eyeglasses and was the bookkeeper and assistant to WALTER KAPPE. He is about 32 to 35 years of age, about 5' 4"-6" tall, weighs 130 to 135 pounds, is of slender build and has a dark full head of hair. He is clean shaven and has the appearance of a small, weak man. He is very quiet. I asked him one time whether he intended to come to the United States and he said "Well, its possible that I come too".

Heinrich Heintz

WALTER KAPPE, opened the school by addressing the group named in the foregoing. KAPPE explained to us that the German soldiers on the Front were doing their duty and that it was necessary to stop production in the United States. He stated that this was as important as any big battle that would be fought. He introduced Dr. SCHULZ and Dr. KOENIG, who were to be the instructors and said they would instruct us in sabotage work we were to do in the United States. KAPPE also said each one of us who was coming to the United States should make up a story as to our personal history background and that we should rehearse these stories carefully and should be instructed and closely examined as to these stories by the Group Leaders. KAPPE also instructed us to adopt an assumed name and to use these names at all times in order that we might become accustomed to them. The name I adopted and used was HENRY KAYNAR. BILL DEMPSEY suggested that name for me. This name was adopted because it was a Polish name and I was to tell anyone who arrested me that I was born in Wilkes-Barre, Pennsylvania, that my father was a coal miner and my mother died when I was 15 years of age; I then went to New York and worked in different Polish restaurants and after that I worked on farms. I was to say I have never seen my father after I left Wilkes-Barre. After this story was framed, GEORGE DASCH went over with me on several different occasions and KAPPE also went over it with me on several different occasions. Each member of the class had a similar story as to his background and each one of them was drilled in this story and was cross-examined as to his story on numerous occasions by DASCH, KELLY and KAPPE.

The school at Quince Gut Farm lasted about three and one half weeks. We were in school for five or six days of each week. The teaching at the school consisted chiefly of working with explosives, incendiaries and their use, and sabotage, the training on our personal history stories, and brushing up on our English. We also conducted numerous experiments and used the explosives and incendiaries on a test ground, which I have already located. Each person had to make up some of the various formulas that they gave us and had to work with the TNT we prepared. The school and training consisted chiefly of making and using explosives and incendiaries, and methods of igniting incendiaries and setting off the explosives.

The first thing we studied was incendiaries and we spent about one week learning formulas and making incendiaries. The incendiaries that we made and used were divided into two classes, the first being the light-burning incendiaries, and the second being the hard-burning incendiaries. During the school, the groups of students worked and studied together in the classroom part of the time, but during part of the time one group would be in the classroom learning formulas and receiving instructions, and the other group would be in the Laboratory preparing incendiaries and explosives.

I am unable to recall definitely the formulas we were furnished for making the incendiaries, but have no reason to withhold them, and have attempted to supply them to the best of my recollection.

Heinrich Heintz

There were three different formulas furnished for the light-burning incendiaries. I recall one of these formulas was:

One hundred parts of Saltpeter and ninety parts of sulphur. This was placed in a tin or paper container and was ignited by either of the ignition formulas, which I will give later. ✓

Another of the light-burning incendiaries formula, consisted of the following:

Two hundred parts of Saltpeter, and one hundred parts of sawdust. In mixing this formula, the sawdust was dampened, and the saltpeter was then mixed with the sawdust. It was then permitted to dry and was ignited by either of the ignition formulas, hereinafter set out.

I do not recall the third light-burning formula.

There were three formulas furnished us for hard-burning incendiaries. As I recall the first of these formulas was:

One hundred parts of Aluminum powder, and three hundred or three hundred twenty parts of Caputmortum. These ingredients were powdered and mixed, and ignited by either of the ignition formulas.

Another hard-burning formula, furnished us, consisted of the following:

Hammerscale and Aluminum powder. I believe the portions were three hundred parts of Hammerscale, and one hundred parts of Aluminum powder.

The third formula for hard-burning incendiaries, I believe, consisted of:

One hundred ninety parts of Plaster of Paris, and one hundred parts of Aluminum powder.

We were furnished with two formulas for igniting the light and hard burning incendiaries. The first of these formulas consisted of:

One part of sugared powder to three parts of potassium chlorate. This could be set off by one drop of sulphuric acid, by a fuse, or other timing device. We tested this ignition system and found it to be too fast in most instances.

Herminia Fein

The other ignition formula that we were given, consisted of the following:

Three parts of Potassium Permanganate, two parts of flour and one part of sulphur. I am not sure that I have the correct proportions, in that the formula could be 3-2-1, or 3-1-2. This ignition formula was also tested and was found more satisfactory for igniting both the light and hard-burning incendiaries. About a soup spoonful of this ignition material is sufficient to set off the fire.

We were furnished a formula for making a substitute for TNT, but I do not at this time recall of what the formula consisted.

We were also furnished a formula for making our own detonator caps and I recall that two of the things to be used in making these caps were Urotropin, and 30 per cent of hydrogen peroxide, but I do not recall the other thing that was mixed with these two to make the detonator caps. They did not stress this formula much as they told us they would furnish us with all the caps that they would need.

They also gave us the formula for making the fuse, which formula consisted of:

Fifty parts of Potassium Permanganate, and fifty parts of Plaster of Paris.

The third week of the school was used in making and experimenting with timing devices for setting off incendiaries and explosives. One of these timing devices was an ordinary movement of an eight-day clock. This was used by attaching a piece of electric wire on the main spring and when the main spring runs down, the spring will expand and make connection with the wire, thereby closing the circuit and causing the explosion. The clock was also used for a second timing device, by the use of a clock with a celluloid face in which was bored three small holes. These holes were for the purpose of holding the wire tight, and an eighth of an inch of wire was extended through one of the holes so that it did not touch the dial of the clock. The other wire was attached to the clock itself. The device could be set for one hour or for any time up to 12 hours, by removing either the minute or hour hand. They advised us, however, not to set the device for more than 11 hours.

They also furnished us with specially made timing clocks. These clocks were constructed with a hammer or lever which could be set for the required length of time, similar to the alarm clock. At the set time, the hammer would be released and strike the detonator cap attached to the device.

Heinrich Heintz

There were two types of caps furnished with this clock and they could be screwed into the proper position so that the hammer could strike them. One of these caps was a detonator cap setting off the explosives and the other was an incendiary cap, setting off the incendiary. We were furnished with a supply of each kind of these caps, one of them is brass and the other is army gray, but I did not recall now which was to be used with the explosive and which was to be used with the incendiary. It was pointed out to the class that this type of timing device might be effectively used on ships, but that it should be placed on one side of the ship below the water line, if explosives were used.

Another type of timing device was made by taking an ordinary penny match box, reinforced on one side with a strip of wood, at one end of which box was placed an ordinary razor blade, split in half, one end of which was notched in the piece of wood, then a piece of rubber or rubber hose was soaked in benzine or gasoline, which would cause the rubber to expand, thereby bending the razor blade outward. Through the end of the rubber hose there was placed a wire which extended a fraction of an inch, depending on the time desired, from the blade. A second wire was attached to the blade. When the rubber hose dried, it contracted, thereby releasing the pressure on the razor blade and allowing it to make contact with the wire, thus closing the circuit.

We were also taught how to prepare or make a timing device by using an ordinary tin can or other type of container, with a small hole in the bottom, the size of the hole depending upon the length of time desired. This container was filled with water. On the top of the can was a wire once twisted around the can, then going through the middle, leaving a circle in the middle of the can. This was for the purpose of having a bearing for the wire which extended through the hole which had a piece of cork on the bottom, or piece of wood, for the purpose of floating. As the water leaked out of the can, the float sinks with the water level and the wire at the top of the cork makes contact with the wire at the top of the can, when the leaking water permits it to, and an electrical circuit is caused, thereby setting off the explosive.

They also taught us how to use a key ring for a timing device: A piece of tape is wrapped around one section of the key ring and one of the electrical posts is attached by wire to that portion of the key ring, which is wrapped with tape. The other electrical post is attached to the other side of the key ring. A piece of lump sugar or rock candy is then placed between the two sections of the key ring after it is sprung apart. The key ring is then placed in water and the lump sugar or rock candy melts. After it melts, the key ring makes contact with the wire which is tied to the tape, thereby completing an electrical circuit and setting off the device.

They further explained to us another timing device which was made by filling a bottle or test tube, part full of dried peas; a cork with a screw was placed in the test tube directly over the peas. One of the electrical

Herminia Hink

posts was attached to the screw in this cork. Another cork with a screw in it was placed in the test tube, above the first cork. The screw in this end was attached to the other electrical post and the heads of the two screws were placed so that they could make contact. The peas were wet and as they expanded, they forced the cork above them up, and eventually the two corks came together and an electrical circuit was caused.

They also told us how to make a chemical timing device by the use of sulphuric acid, powdered sugar and Potassium Chlorate. The sulphuric acid is placed in a bottle and the bottle is sealed with a paper cap. The powdered sugar and Potassium Chlorate are put in a position where the sulphuric acid would drop on them, "eating away the paper cap, thereby starting a very quick hot fire.

The last course we had in school was instruction in the use of secret writing. The first method of secret writing was the use of any laxative which would turn blue in water. I believe this could be used on cloth or paper. This was to be developed by the use of water strained through cigarette ashes. They also told us something about the use of glycerin, but I am not sure whether this was for reproducing or the actual writing. They particularly gave us the name of "Ex-Lax", as one of the laxatives to be used in secret writings. They further told us aspirin could be used for secret writing on paper. This was also developed by the ashes and water.

During one of the lectures, they told us that secret writing could be done by placing a dry sheet of paper over a wet sheet, and writing on the dry sheet, thereby leaving an indentation on the wet sheet of paper. All of this writing was to be done with a toothpick with cotton wrapped around one end.

They told us to place the secret writing on the back of what appeared to be an ordinary business letter.

After finishing our courses at the school, we were given a week's vacation and allowed to go home, but were instructed to report to Berlin in about a week. While in Berlin waiting to go to France, and then to the United States, we visited two factories. The first factory we visited was in Bitterfeld, and the second was at Dessau. I believe both of these factories belong to the Leuna Werke, and they were both Aluminum plants. In this connection, I wish to state, I believe that our main sabotage objective in this country was the main aluminum plants, and they told us of a large aluminum plant which was just being completed in the State of Tennessee, in the United States, and advised us to sabotage this plant if possible by destroying transformers or the electric wire towers. They also explained to us that by destroying the large presses in the aluminum plants we could slow down production.

Heinrich Himmler

At the Dessau factory they took us out and showed us the big transformers and suggested that if they could be destroyed, production would be stopped for some time. We went over the entire factory at Bitterfeld. They told that if we were successful in stopping the production of aluminum, they would consider that we had done a good job, and it would be all right with them if we discontinued our sabotage work.

During the course of instruction, we had received some instructions and suggestions as to the manner in which the power line towers might be blown up by TNT. WALTER KAPPE had a list of all the Aluminum Plants in the United States, and they were all mentioned during his talk to us, but they mentioned the new plant in Tennessee, especially.

On the first day we went through the aluminum plant, Dr. SCHULZ, Dr. KOENIG, WALTER KAPPE and REINHOLD BARTH were present and made the tour with us, and made the comments with reference to the sabotage possibilities which the plants presented. On the second day, Dr. KOENIG and WALTER KAPPE had left and only Dr. SCHULZ and REINHOLD BARTH accompanied us.

I might state that about the second day of the school, WALTER KAPPE called me aside and asked me whether or not I had any training yet, or knowledge of radio. I told him that radio had been my hobby at one time but that I had not worked with it in several years. He asked me whether or not I would be interested in doing radio transmitting in the United States. I explained to him I had never done any transmitting and that my experience had been limited to building a small receiver and repairing radio receivers. He asked me whether or not I would be interested in taking lessons in radio transmitting and I refused. QUINTAS told me he was also asked whether or not he would like to receive instructions in radio transmitting and he told me also that he refused.

I have failed to mention that during the course of instruction, we were told how to sabotage railroads and freight cars. One of the devices to be used in this connection was an electrical device which was placed on the track and the circuit was closed by the train passing over the track and the explosion flowed. They told us before using this, we should be sure that this device was used only on freight cars. In this connection we were cautioned throughout the school, to be very careful and not to cause the death of civilians.

In connection with railroad sabotage, they also told us how freight cars might be sabotaged by placing sand or emery dust, or other abrasives, in the bearings. While were in Berlin, we visited a railroad yard and REINHOLD BARTH showed us the bearings into which we should throw the sand or abrasives. He also showed us the locomotives and explained how the vital parts of the locomotive might be sabotaged. He explained that emery or other abrasives could be put in the driver arms of the locomotive and cause considerable damage. He also got on the locomotive and showed us the oil filter, and said we could

Heinrich Heine

put emery dust or an abrasive in this oil filter and it would damage the locomotive.

While ^{we} were conducting experiments on the proving ground, during this school, they attached a load of TNT to a railroad rail, which was fastened down, and blew a part of the railway in this manner. The material used in this experiment was made in the Laboratory from the formula which they had given us and was contained in a tin can or bottle.

Heinrich Heintz

After we had finished looking over the aluminum plants in Dessau, Bitterfeld, Germany, we were taken to a number of water locks located in the waterways around Berlin. KAPPE and another man, whose name they did not give us but who appeared to be an expert on locks, explained the various parts of the locks to us and showed us how it would be possible to best sabotage water locks. They told us it was almost impossible to destroy a whole lock, but that we could jam the doors by damaging the hinges thereby preventing the locks from opening. They explained that it was difficult to do this since you do not know how deep the hinges are and whether you could get near enough to the locks. One of the means of damaging these hinges was by the use of explosives. While talking to us on the damaging of locks, KAPPE mentioned to us the locks in the Ohio River in the United States. He told us that these locks controlled a very important waterway, but they were only in operation for a short time of the year in the Summer time. The man who appeared to be the expert on locks described the various types of locks to us and said the type of lock which elevates upward was a difficult lock and it would be almost impossible to damage. He also said the locks which open like doors could be damaged by jamming the hinges. The name of the Panama Canal was brought up, but they told us to stay away from this lock as it was carefully guarded.

During the course of instructions, we were advised not to attempt to destroy any large dams or other large concrete structures as this was practically impossible for a small group of men and would require the services of an entire army.

While we were in Berlin, Germany, we received fake Social Security and Selective Service registration cards. These cards were delivered by WALTER KAPPE to GEORGE DASCH and KELLY and I received my cards from GEORGE DASCH. DASCH filled out the registration and Social Security cards before he delivered them to me and the other members of the group. When I was arrested in New York City on June 20, 1942, I had in my possession the fake registration and Social Security cards, which were delivered to me by GEORGE DASCH in Berlin, Germany and they were turned over to Agents of the F.B.I.

The Social Security card given to me by DASCH was filled out in the name of HENRY KAJNAR and bore number 346-01-5692. It bears the date of 12/27/36. This card has been shown to me and I have identified it by placing my initials on the back.

The Selective Service card furnished to me was made out in the name of HENRY KAYNAR, 386 E. 79th Street, N.Y.C., N.Y. It bears the date of registration 10/16/40, 21st Precinct, 17th Ward, N.Y.C., N.Y. The name of the registrar is shown as JANE MOSCOVITZ. Before I left Berlin, I placed my signature on this card as HENRY KAYNAR. My complete description was also placed on this card by DASCH. This Selective Service card has been shown to me and I have identified it by placing my initials on the back.

At the time the above cards were given to us in Berlin, they told us that we should get rid of these cards as soon as possible in the United States and to obtain real cards over here. They told us to register under Selective

Heinrich Heine

Service in the United States if it could be done. They did not explain how, but DASCH was to find out a way to get proper identification papers. In connection with the Social Security cards, they told us we might obtain a position for the purpose of getting a card, but told us domestic jobs in the United States did not require Social Security cards.

While we were in school at Quince Gut Farm, KAPPE told us that the leaders of each group would be furnished with a large sum of money. He explained that this money was to be used in buying a farm or paint shop or some other legitimate business to cover up our activities. They also told us that each man would be furnished with about \$4,000. in a money belt and with some smaller money to be placed on our person and to be used for our expenses until we got to this country where we could open the money belt. The money given to each man was to be used for his living expenses and if any additional money was needed, DASCH was to secure it. They told us to lay low and become accustomed to American life again even if it required six months and we were to use the \$4,000. for living expenses.

While we were in Berlin in the apartment house, DASCH received the money from WALTER KAPPE and he had charge of all of the money except some spending money which we had in our pockets until the day before the submarine landed us on the coast of Long Island, N.Y. In this connection, KAPPE and DASCH told me to stay around the City of New York where I knew my way around. I do not know where the others were to stay and I believe this was left up to GEORGE DASCH. I asked about this and told them I felt safe around New York.

KAPPE told us the money we would have would be in \$50. bills. We asked him whether or not the money was fake or good and he told us it was good money, but that we should be careful in spending it as the numbers might be known in this country. He said this money was taken to Germany through German Banks. KAPPE did not tell the members of the group just how much money he was giving DASCH in the big sum. In telling us to spend this money, they told us not to change it in a bank and they also told us not to deposit it. They told us that we should have a small bank account, but that we should not use this money in opening the bank account. WALTER KAPPE gave us all of these instructions with reference to the money.

KELLY'S group left the submarine base at Lorient, France the day before we left and they received their money belt while at Lorient, France. They also received some money and small bills and found some gold certificates among this money. ~~They then opened up their money belts and found some gold certificates in the money belts.~~ This made the whole group sore and we asked KAPPE why the gold certificates had been put in with the rest of the money as all gold certificates in the United States had been taken up and KAPPE said "that's nothing boys, don't worry about a little thing like that"; but this instant made the entire group dissatisfied with the careless manner and attitude of KAPPE with reference to our personal safety. KAPPE took the gold certificates from the men in the first group and told us to look our money over to see that there were no gold certificates among the bills and if we found any, we were to destroy them. DASCH examined our smaller

Heinrich Heind

denomination bills that we were to receive and found some gold certificates in this money before we left Lorient, France.

While we were in Berlin waiting to leave for America, they told us that we would bring explosives with us to America. At that time they brought into the apartment house where we were staying four sealed wooden boxes containing explosives and incendiary bombs. Dr. SCHULZ and Dr. KOENIG explained each explosive and incendiary device contained in these boxes. The boxes were not opened, but Dr. SCHULZ had similar devices. They also told us that inside the wooden box was a sealed tin container for the purpose of making the box waterproof. They told us this tin was very thin sheet metal and could be opened by a can opener or a knife. Dr. SCHULZ told us these boxes contained the following explosives and incendiary devices:

- 1 - Several square blocks of TNT. These blocks were light tan or cream color. Dr. SCHULZ had a small piece of TNT when he was explaining it and told us that we could cut the large pieces in the box with a saw or knife and it would not explode. We had not in our training used any ready made TNT but only experimented with the substitute which would do the same job.
- 2 - Piece of TNT which was painted or prepared with some sort of plastic to resemble an ordinary lump of coal. I am not sure how many of these were in the box, but it was my understanding there was only one piece ~~in the box~~ *one for each group*. They told us how to make these lumps of coal by the use of TNT and plastic wood. They told us we should use black plastic wood and if we could not get this, we could mix it with black paint so it would resemble coal. Dr. SCHULZ told us that this was an example of a perfect work and said this was made up in their shop. We did not make any of this type of explosive at the school. He said that the artificial lump of coal would melt about half way before it exploded and said it could be used on a railroad locomotive or any coal burning furnace. Dr. SCHULZ mentioned this could be used in any kind of steam boiler and that it would crack and ruin the boiler. He said it would not tear the boiler apart. At the time they were explaining this to us, one of the members of the class asked if this lump of coal would be exploded by one of the coal cutting or cracking machines and Dr. SCHULZ told me it would not but would kill the effect of the explosion. I forgot to mention while I was outlining what we were taught in school that we also received instructions with regard to this form of TNT and its possible uses.
- 3 - Fuses. One type of fuse was the TNT fuse which was approximately $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch in diameter, that is, the rubber hose in which the fuse was concealed was $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch in diameter. The TNT core of this rubber tube is $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch in diameter. This TNT fuse is used in exploding more than one

James J. [Signature]

piece of dynamite simultaneously. The pieces of dynamite which were prepared for simultaneous explosion were connected with one another by this TNT fuse. One of the sticks of dynamite is loaded with a regular dynamite cap and fuse and when it explodes, the TNT fuse explodes and causes almost simultaneous explosion on various sticks of dynamite. They told us this was the best method of sabotaging power line towers if the legs of the power line towers were over about four feet apart. If they were over four feet apart, the separate charges should be placed on the separate legs and connected with this TNT fuse. If they were closer than four feet to one another, each leg should be charged with one load of dynamite in which a cap was placed near and facing the stick of dynamite which was to be exploded first with a fuse and the pressure from the first explosion would, therefore, explode the other charges.

The second type of fuse contained in the box is the ordinary dynamite fuse.

- 4 - Detonating caps. Dr. SCHULZ and Dr. KOENIG also told us that we had a supply of detonating caps in the boxes and that we would probably not have to buy or make any detonating caps. They explained that there were three types of caps and that they were sealed up in wooden blocks. They could be removed from the wooden blocks by cutting a portion of the wood which had been glued on and the glued portion could be seen by examining the block carefully. They told us to be careful and not to drop the detonating caps. There were three types of caps furnished to us; the first type was the ordinary cap to be used with a fuse in exploding dynamite and TNT. There were two types of caps to be used with the fourteen day time clock device. These two types of caps are made so that they screwed on to the fourteen day clock. One of these caps is gray and the other brass. One of these types of caps is to be used with explosives. One of these types of caps has a red ring around the bottom of the cap and this cap is to be used with the incendiaries, the other cap was to be used with the explosives.
- 5 - Time clocks. DR. SCHULZ and DR. KOENIG showed us a fourteen day time clock and told us we had ten of these devices in the boxes. I have already explained how these clocks work but I failed to mention that each clock has a separate key which is used in pushing back the trigger which strikes the detonating cap. Dr. SCHULZ or Dr. KOENIG told us that this was the best device we had for use in our work and they seemed to be very proud of the construction of this clock.
- 6 - Incendiary pencils and fountain pens. They also told us there were ten incendiary pencils and ten incendiary fountain

Heinrich Zisch

pens in the boxes. I have already explained that we received instructions as to how these should be operated, but would like to mention at this time that Dr. SCHULZ said the incendiary pencils were made in England. This was developed through a discussion when we mentioned they were very nice and wondered why we could not be furnished with more of them. One of the doctors then said that they were made in England and they could not get any more of them.

While they were telling us what was in the boxes and explaining their uses to us, they showed us a fuse lighter which was made of paper tubing with the wire sticking out of one end. When the wire was pulled from the paper tubing, a flash of fire came out the other end of the paper tubing and this could be used in lighting fuses. I am not sure whether there were any of these fuse lighters in the boxes of material that they furnished us.

I believe Doctors KOENIG and SCHULZ told us there were ten different items contained in the box and I have attempted to recall and describe each of the items as they explained them to us.

After Doctors KOENIG and SCHULZ finished explaining to us what the boxes contained and the uses we could make of the materials, the boxes were ~~sent from the apartment down into the basement~~ where they remained until we left Berlin for Paris and Lorient, France.

Before we left Berlin, we talked about how we would keep the explosives when we arrived in America and DASCH and KAPPE agreed that we would bury them in the sand or in the woods at the place where we landed. We would then buy our farm or other place of business where we could establish a front and keep the explosives without being found and return to the place we had buried them and return to this place after it had been established.

While we were in Berlin receiving our final instructions, we were taken by KAPPE to a public school, one group at a time, for the purpose of receiving our uniforms to be worn on the submarine and on landing in the United States. The uniform given to us consisted of a pair of khaki pants; a plain slipover khaki jacket without shiny buttons; a "ship" cap with a swastika and a wing on each side of the swastika on the front of the cap; high type heavy black German shoes (Stiefels); gray woolen socks and a black leather belt. This same type uniform was worn by the crew members on the submarine. WALTER KAPPE told us to use this uniform on the trip over to the United States and when we landed on the shores of the United States. He explained that there were guards on the beach and that if we got caught as we landed we would be prisoners of war if we were wearing a uniform and they told us if someone caught us while landing that we should make some kind of excuse or story, but this story was not explained to us in detail and I did not have such a story clearly in my mind.

KAPPE also instructed us to bring with us one complete set of civilian clothes. These clothes were our own and were clothing that had been purchased

Heinrich Heind

in the United States. Some of the men did not have a full suit of clothing that had been purchased in the United States and they were supplied by other members of the group who had extra clothing that had been purchased in this country. I remember that KELLY gave one of the members of his group a suit of clothes and also gave another one of the members a shirt. I furnished BURGER with an undershirt and DASCH furnished one of the members of our group with a pair of trousers. The only German clothing that I wore was a pair of brown shoes that I had purchased in Germany. I wore these shoes into New York City and threw them in an ash can later on.

We were instructed to change from our uniforms to our civilian clothing as soon as we landed on the beach if we had not been caught and they were to be put in the bag in which our civilian clothing was brought to the United States and sent back to the submarine. The suit of clothes which I selected to wear in the United States was a gray suit which I had purchased at Weber & Heilbronner while I was in the United States before I left in 1938. This suit has been recovered and is in the property which was recovered in my room and has been identified by me. I intended to give this suit away.

Heinrich Gerlach

One day while we were in Berlin, WALTER KAPPE and another man, who did not give his name, and REINHOLD BARTH, called us into a room, one at a time and talked with us. KAPPE did the talking. He explained that while I was gone, he would pay my wife my salary, amounting to 400 Marks a month. We were cautioned to keep our mouths shut, and not to say anything to anybody about this venture, under any circumstances. KAPPE then showed me a paper which I read and signed. There was a part of the paper at the bottom which was folded up and which KAPPE would not permit me to read. My signature was above that part of the paper that was folded, and KAPPE told me there was some signatures on the paper which he could not permit me to see. This paper appeared to be a contract and provided for the payment of my salary to my wife. I recall that it mentioned the penalty, in the event we failed to go through with our work, and KAPPE impressed on me the penalty was death. In this connection I might state I do not wish to leave the impression that I was forced to do the work. I believe that nothing would have been done to me if I had refused, when I was first approached, with reference to this matter. After this paper was signed we had about two days in Berlin, in which we were free to go and come, and do what we wanted to do. We were in Berlin about a week altogether and during this time I was living with my sister, MARTA KRUGER RINGSTRASSE 49.

All of our meetings were held in an apartment house, the exact address of which I do not recall. This apartment house was about a five-minute walk from the Zoo Railroad Terminal. It was located just one block off Kurfuerstendamm, which is the main street in Berlin. I believe that the name of the street on which the apartment house was located was Taun Strasse.

After we had been in Berlin for about a week, KAPPE told us to report the next day with all of our things, ready to go to Paris. The next morning the two groups, who came to the United States, JERRY SWENSEN and WALTER KAPPE, left Berlin at about 11:00 A.M. and went by train to Paris, France. We stayed in Paris, France. We arrived there the morning after we left Berlin, and stayed all that day and two other full days. We spent our time in Paris, looking the City over and did not receive any more training. We stayed at the Mond Hotel, which is located at the Rue de Opera. We left Paris about 10:00 o'clock one evening and traveled all night, and arrived at Lorient, France. The next morning, while in Lorient, we stayed in a small hotel, the name and location of which I do not recall. The morning after we arrived in Lorient, BILL KELLY's group left. They left us in a hotel and KAPPE took them to a submarine base. I did not know any of the details as to their trip, but some one in the group at one time said that they would probably land in Florida, but he told me not to say anything about this as they were not supposed to tell us anything about their plans. We understood we would probably sometime see them in the United States.

The day after KELLY's group left the hotel, KAPPE took us to the Pier where our submarine was docked. The number on the submarine was 202. During the voyage, we observed that all of the members of the submarine crew had a good luck piece in the form of a porcupine, hanging from their caps. We asked them what this meant and they told us that their submarine had a picture of a porcupine painted on it ~~and this~~ was this was their good luck amulet.

464.

Reinhold Barth

During the trip over, the crew gave each of our group, one of the good luck pieces. At the time, I was arrested, I still had this small tin porcupine.

Before we left the hotel at Lorient, France, JERRY SWENSEN developed a venereal disease and it was necessary for him to return to Paris and enter a hospital. We bade him goodbye and when we left him, he said he would see us in the United States later on, and it is my opinion that SWENSEN will probably be in the next group coming to the United States.

I have outlined the trip to the United States in the submarine in my original statement dated June 21, 1942 and cannot add anything to that part of the statement. The trip itself was uneventful and we were seasick a lot of the time. During the voyage, one of the crew members said he had seen a big sail boat, but we did not attack any ship on the way over.

I have also outlined in my original statement, dated June 21, 1942, the landing from the submarine and the burying of the boxes containing the explosives and incendiaries and the clothing. I would like to add, however, that at the time we entered the small ~~fish~~^{motor} boat, that DASCH had four or five peculiar matches. I later asked QUINTAS, what these matches were to be used for and he told me for secret writing. I also recall that when we were on the beach, DASCH lost a notebook and QUINTAS lost a shoe and we attempted to locate the notebook and the shoe, DASCH going back to the beach to the spot where we first landed.

As outlined in my original statement, we split in Jamaica, and QUINTAS and I stayed together and DASCH and BURGER stayed together. Before we separated, however, DASCH told us to meet him at 3:00 o'clock on Saturday at a Horn and Hardart Cafeteria. This Horn & Hardart was located in the same building as Macy's Department Store. We made some purchases at Macys before we met DASCH at 3:00 P.M. at the Horn & Hardart Cafeteria. After we left Horn & Hardarts, we went to Macys again to make some additional purchases. We then went down into a subway station and asked a subway attendant to recommend a hotel to us and he recommended the Martinique Hotel. We then went to the Martinique, where I registered as HENRY KAYNER, 49 State Street, Albany, New York.

Before we left DASCH on Saturday, QUINTAS made arrangements for us to meet DASCH at the Swiss Chalet, at 1:00 o'clock. On Sunday, QUINTAS and I went to the Swiss Chalet at about 1:00 o'clock in the afternoon, and waited until after 2:00, but BURGER and DASCH did not show up. We had previously made arrangements to meet in front of Grant's Tomb at 6:00 P.M., if we failed to meet at the Swiss Chalet, and QUINTAS and I went to Grant's Tomb, at 6:00 o'clock, and BURGER and DASCH met us there. I at this time told DASCH that I did not like to carry all of this money around with me and he said he was going to deposit the money, and I asked him to take my money and deposit for me. DASCH agreed to take my money at that time, but I did not deliver it to him at this time, as I did not have it.

Gertrude Gertrude

When we left the vicinity of Grant's Tomb, QUINTAS and I took the subway from the 125th Street Station and went downtown where we ate and later returned to the Hotel Martinique.

On Monday, QUINTAS and I got up about 9:00 o'clock, had breakfast took a walk and then met DASCH and BURGER at the Horn & Hardart Cafeteria, in the Macy building. I believe we met at 1:00 o'clock or it might have been later in the afternoon. While we were seated there at the table in the Horn & Hardart Cafeteria, I passed my money belt to DASCH. I had previously opened up one compartment of the money belt and had taken out between \$400 and \$500 of the money. The remainder of the money was in the belt when I gave it to GEORGE DASCH on Monday, June 15, 1942.

Before we met DASCH and BURGER at the Horn & Hardart Cafeteria on Monday, June 15, 1942, QUINTAS and I had secured rooms at the rooming house located at 149 West 76th Street, which rooms we located through an advertisement in a New York newspaper. I wish to state that there was no particular reason why we obtained a room in this particular vicinity, and before I rented a room, I tried to find one advertised for rent in the Bronx, as I preferred this section.

I do not recall exactly what I did Tuesday, but I stayed at home Tuesday night. BURGER, QUINTAS and DASCH went to the Swing Club. I further wish to state that I did not at any time see GEORGE DASCH after I gave him the money belt in Horn & Hardarts, on Monday, June 15, 1942, and I do not know where GEORGE DASCH is. QUINTAS and BURGER also told me that they do not know where DASCH is.

Wednesday night, BURGER and QUINTAS and I went to the Swing Club. BURGER did not arrive until about 10:00 o'clock that night and we did not leave until about 3:00 o'clock Thursday morning.

I didn't do anything Thursday, except a little sightseeing and Thursday night, I stayed at home. BURGER and QUINTAS went back to the Swing Club Thursday night and QUINTAS did not come back to the rooming house on West 76th Street that night. He later told me he stayed in a room at the Governor Clinton Hotel. QUINTAS or BURGER had obtained a telephone number from a girl named "FRANIE" at the Swing Club and Friday we went to the Governor Clinton Hotel and to BURGER's room and they called this telephone number. They made arrangements for us to visit this girl and two other girls at an apartment house located at 144 West 86th Street. We visited these girls on Friday night and stayed there until after 4:00 o'clock in the morning. I don't recall the names of any of these girls but the madam of the house, was named ANNA.

Saturday morning, June 20, 1942, we got up late and left the rooming house about 11:00 o'clock. We met PETER BURGER at 41st Street and 5th Avenue about 3:00 P.M., visited the Oxford Bar for about 45 minutes and then started home. I was arrested on Columbus Avenue near 75th Street as I approached my home, on Saturday afternoon of June 20th.

Joseph H. Heink

I would like to state that during our course at the school, I gained the impression that when Dasch and Kelly arrived in the United States, they were to have a meeting and were then to contact some other person already in the United States in connection with sabotage work.

I would like to state I forgot to mention that while we were receiving our training at the Quince Gut Farm, all of the members of the school were furnished uniforms which they wore part of the time. I believe these uniforms were either Polish or Serbian uniforms.

I also forgot to mention at the time we were in Lorient, France, Kappe wore a German officer's uniform down to the submarine when we left, and I was told by someone that the shoulder piece on this uniform indicated that he was what is known as a "sonderfuer" which means "special leader."

With further reference to Kappe, during my conversations with him, he indicated that he liked the conveniences of the United States and would like to return. It is possible that Kappe will come to this country, and, if he does, it is my opinion that he will carry out the planned sabotage work. However, in my opinion, Kappe is too well known in the United States and is so unusual in appearance and size that he would be unable to hide in this country.

I would also like to add that Kurt Laas, who is employed at the Volkswagenwerk, told me that Walter Kappe was the person who selected me as a member of the sabotage squad to come to the United States.

At the time we left the hotel in Lorient to enter the submarine, Kappe went with us into the submarine and talked with the Captain, and we all had a drink together, and Kappe shook hands with us and wished us good luck and told the Captain that Dasch would tell him all about it.

With further reference to our course at the sabotage school, we were also instructed by either Dr. Schulz or Dr. Koenig that in connection with the blowing up of oil or gasoline tanks that explosives should be used. Dr. Schulz or Dr. Koenig also told us that the Czechs had done a good sabotage job against Germany by the use of emery dust mixed with wax into a ball and placing this ball in the bearings of locomotives. As soon as the bearings would get hot, the wax would melt and allow the emery dust to damage the parts.

Also, in connection with explosives, Kappe told us that if we ran out of explosives, we should attempt to have farmers buy an additional supply for us, or buy them ourselves as farmers.

James J. Smith

During the demonstrations at the school in the use of detonator caps, Dr. Schulz placed a detonator cap in a metal pipe approximately one-half inch in diameter, and, through the use of a fuse, exploded this cap and blew the pipe into a number of pieces. This was done only to show us how powerful the caps were. He told us that some of the caps which were being furnished might even explode if they were dropped from a table.

I have described above the 14-day time clock device, and I forgot to mention that in the boxes which we brought from Germany were some special-made threaded brass tubing to be used for the placing of different types of detonator caps into the time clock. The reason for this tubing was that we had special caps for this timing device, and if we ran out of these caps or did not have them, by using this brass pipe, ordinary caps would fit and could be used with this timing device.

I have also mentioned above that there were four members of the sabotage class who were not to come to the United States and who did not speak English. These men received instructions in the making of the formulas for explosives and incendiaries; and at one time near the end of the school, one of our instructors told one of these men to get up and lecture the class along these lines so that he could get that experience; and I believe from this that this group of four men were receiving training as instructors.

From the general conversation of Kappe and the instructors at the school and from the fact that we learned that Bill Dempsey and Jerry Swensen are coming to the United States with sabotage groups, I gained the impression that there was to be a series of these schools, and that additional men will be sent to the United States in submarines.

On the final day of our training at Quince Cut Farm, we were given a final test in the form of intended sabotage. The instructors told us that a certain spot would be a plant that we were supposed to blow up. Everyone had their orders and two fellows were together. This took place at night. We were told that we should sneak into this place that was a plant and place our explosives and get away without anyone seeing us. We went out and came in to do this work, and ~~they saw me~~, and I stepped on something that went off with an explosion. I think it was a firecracker. Then these instructors set off a lot of firecrackers. One of the fellows was told to go into a little stone house, and when he went inside, the house was filled with tear gas. The reason for this test was to see how well we could operate, and they told us we would have to be quiet and make no noise so that we would be able to do this without their seeing us.

I have mentioned above that Herman Neubauer was a member of the second crew to come to the United States. I now remember that Neubauer was known as Nicholas.

Heinrich Heine

In connection with the formulas which we were furnished with at the school, I now recall that they instructed us in the use of what they called a "Molotof Cocktail." This was prepared by using a ginger ale bottle or any other type of bottle, and placing approximately one inch of sulphuric acid in the bottle and then filling the bottle with gasoline. The bottle is then corked. We were then told to remove the label from the bottle and to place under the label a mixture of potassium permanganate with sugar and glue. This mixture was composed of three parts of the potassium permanganate, two parts of sugar and one part of glue. Only a small amount of this mixture was placed under the label, and the label was then put back on the bottle. They told us that this type of incendiary was used by the Russians against the German tanks. We were told that this could be used for setting fires and that the proper method was to throw the bottle into whatever we desired to burn.

On the final night when we were given the practical problem, this type of incendiary was tested and worked perfectly. During this test an unknown man came there to observe us. He was an elderly man. I did not learn his name or anything about him.

I have explained above the way in which I was approached with the proposition of coming to the United States to work for Germany, and that I received a typed, unsigned letter instructing me to report to the Quince Gut Farm. I now recall that this letter contained the notation "Ausland Abwehr", which means "Foreign Defense." This was typed under the date on the letter. The letter itself had no letterhead, and it was typed on a thin sheet of paper. When I reported to the school at Quince Gut Farm, I gave this letter to Kappe, and he kept it.

I have read the above statement consisting of 27 pages, which are typewritten, and have signed my name to each page thereof. This statement is true and is complete according to the best of my recollection.

Heinrich Heintz

Witnessed:

G. L. Johnson

O. H. Stanley

Special Agents, Federal Bureau of Investigation,
United States Department of Justice
607 U. S. Court House
New York, New York

Tippet
Kerling - Haupt -
Neubauer

EDWARD JOHN KERLING: Statement of June 30, 1942. Stated that Kappe spoke of setting up a radio transmitting station in the United States for Kerling's group to use in communicating with Germany (plans never carried past formative stage).

On Beach at Jacksonville, gave sachel containing money to Herbert Haupt (not Neubauer, as stated in original statement). Stated that on handkerchief in secret ink were written name and addresses of Karl Krepper, care of Gene Frey, R.R. No. 2, Box Forty, Rahway, N.J., and name and address of Walter Froelich, 3643 N. Whipple St., Chicago. Froelich's name had been given to him by Haupt (Froelich's nephew, to use as a contact in the United States.).

Also states that name and address of Helmuth Leinert, Astoria, N.Y. was in secret ink on Dasch's handkerchief.

After arriving in New York, Kerling and Thiel talked to Leiner on two occasions. Kerling told him that he had just arrived from Germany and what his purpose in being here was and also gave him \$50.00. Leinert helped Kerling to contact Heddy Englmann, and Kerling told her that he had just returned from Germany.

On Tuesday, June 23, Leinert accompanied Kerling to Newark, N.J., where Kerling attempted to verify the address of Krepper which had been given him in Germany by Lieut. Kappe who had said that in case he needed help Krepper might be in position to furnish it. Kerling intended to contact Krepper to help him find a hideout. He was supposed to use the code word "Pastor Kaiser" which would indicate that he came from Germany on behalf of Lieut. Kappe and that Krepper should furnish him assistance.

HERBERT HANS HAUPT, June 28, 1942, page 8: States that each of the saboteurs was to use a fictitious name in the United States. Haupt's was to be Larry Jordan, and each was given two registration cards, one of which was blank to be filled out when convenient and the other of which was filled out in the fictitious name, Larry Jordan. They were also given Social Security cards, but Haupt's, apparently by mistake, was filled out in his true name rather than Larry Jordan. States that they were told to attempt to develop contacts and assistants in the United States for the purpose of generally creating terror and panic by explosions in public places. States that Kerling was given a small bottle containing several matches to be used for secret writing.

States that the money they were given was to be used for expenses and to pay necessary bribes or other expenses necessary to carry out the sabotage program.

States that on landing in Florida, they were dressed in swimming trunks wearing army caps to place them in the status of German soldiers if they were captured while entering.

Page 11. Before leaving Jacksonville, Kerling gave Haupt one of the zipper bags with the false bottom containing the money which Haupt was to take to Chicago and leave at the home of Walter Froehling.

Page 12. States that Kappe told him to use Froehling as a mail drop, and force him to cooperate by telling him that his brother, Otto Froehling, was in a German concentration camp in Stettin and would not be released unless Walter Froehling assisted the group.

Page 12. States that he left the bag containing the money at Froehling's home, and that Froehling and all the others present, including Haupt's parents, knew the money had been given to Haupt on the submarine by officials of the German Government. All of the people present understood that Haupt was back from some work for the German Government and that he and three others had been landed from a submarine in Florida, but did not know the exact nature of the work.

Page 15. Haupt slept at Froehling's house on the night of June 20 and by pre-arrangement received a telephone call from Neubauer around noon on Sunday, June 21. They met at a Chicago theatre and saw the movie "The Invaders". They then had lunch and exchanged information. Neubauer told Haupt about the trip of the other group in Cincinnati, how they acted, and that Kerling, Dasch and Thiel were coming to Chicago to stay in the Knickerbocker Hotel on July 6 and that Neubauer was to meet them and Haupt reported his own activities to Neubauer but falsely stated to Neubauer that he had told everyone that he had just returned from Mexico. They arranged to meet again on June 24 at 1:00 p.m. Neubauer stated that he was going to contact Frank Anlauf and leave his money with this man.

Page 16. On June 22, Haupt registered for the Draft at Local Board No. 66 in Chicago. Since he had learned that the FBI had been inquiring about him in his absence in Germany, for draft purposes, he then called on the FBI office in Chicago, told an agent that he had just come back from Mexico, that he had registered for the draft and that he had ROTC training here. The agent permitted him to leave.

Cullom

He then went to 2038 ~~Saxon~~ Street where he visited the parents of a friend of his, Lawrence Jordan, who was an American Sergeant reported missing in the Philippines. That evening he visited Mr. Andreas Dreneau, superintendent of the Simpson Optical Company which made bomb sights for the Government. Dreneau had been back to Germany in 1939. Dreneau offered him a job and he agreed to start work Thursday.

The next day, in the presence of his father, he bought a car, with money his father knew was part of the submarine money.

met

Page 17. On Wednesday, June 24, Haupt ~~met~~ Neubauer by appointment at a Chicago theatre where they again went to the movie and then exchanged information. Neubauer reported that he had left his money with two unnamed people who lived near the home of his wife, Alma's parent, and that he told these people the circumstances of his coming from Germany.

They arranged to meet again on Sunday night at the Uptown theatre.

Page 18. On Thursday, June 25, Haupt called on Bill Wernecke, and learned that he was staying at the farm of Otto Donaph. Mrs. Wernecke called Conaph and told him that it would be all right for Haupt to see her son Bill. Haupt then went to see Bill Wernecke who was very nervous and apprehensive. Haupt told Wernecke he had been in Mexico and South America.

Wernecke and Haupt went together to see Dr. Otten, on South Parkway because Haupt was worried about his health.

That evening the Wernecks and Haupt went for a ride.

Page 19. On June 26, Wernecke and Haupt called on Mrs. Elizabeth Dilling, author of "The Red Network". Haupt stayed downstairs while Wernecke went up and collected some literature wrapped in a package. Later they returned to the Donaph house where Wernecke received a call from Larry Reynolds, a former member of the America First Committee. Reynolds later joined Wernecke and Haupt and they went for a ride. The next day, shortly after he left home Haupt was arrested by FBI agents.

HERMANN NEUBAUER, June 28, 1942.

Page 5. The landing off the Coast of Florida was made in a rubber boat together with one of the crew members of the submarine who returned with the rubber boat. All of the landing group were dressed in bathing suits and wore German soldiers caps, green in color, with the Nazi swastika on them. The brought ashore four large wooden boxes containing fuses, explosives, etc., and also carrying their civilian clothes. The boxes were buried in the sand and the German caps taken away from them by Kerling. After their arrival in Cincinnati, Kerling stated to him that he was going to look over the Hotel Gibson, since he was later to meet a member of the other group there. Later in the day Neubauer and Kerling arranged to meet in Chicago at the Knickerbocker Hotel on July 6, and Kerling then left for New York while Neubauer moved on to Chicago.

Page 6. On the next day, June 21, Neubauer called Haupt at the Froehling home by prearrangement and met them at the Chicago theatre where they exchanged information.

On Monday or Tuesday night, June 22d or 23d, Neubauer visited Harry Jacques and his wife Emma, at 221 West North Avenue, Chicago. He had not known them previously but he knew they were friends of his wife. He told them that he had just arrived from Germany; that he had \$3600.00 in his possession and that he wanted them to keep the money for him. After some difficulty in convincing Mr. and Mrs. Jacques that he really was Hermann Neubauer he prevailed upon them to accept the money. He did not tell them how he came to this country or why. Mr. and Mrs. Jacques were the only persons outside the group that he contacted in this country.

Page 7. States that "I admit that I came to the United States with this group for the purpose of committing acts of sabotage and might have done so if the opportunity arose but in discussions with Herbert Haupt at meetings . . . while in Chicago, both of us talked about and felt that we would not have a bit of chance to commit any sabotage."

New York, New York
July 2, 1942

I, GEORGE JOHN DASCH, make the following voluntary signed statement to Special Agents H.D. Wills and F.G. Johnstone, whom I knew to be Special Agents of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, United States Department of Justice, without any threats, promises or use of force. I realize that I need make no statement and that anything I say can be used against me in a court of law.

I was born in Speyer-on-the Rhine, Germany on February 7, 1903, son of JOHN and FRANCES DASCH, the fifth child of a family of thirteen children. At the age of thirteen, I entered a Catholic Convent to study for the priesthood. During the last war I served with the German Army in Northern France as a clerk.

As a stowaway on the American ship S.S. Schoharie of the Kerr Line, I traveled to the United States from Hamburg, Germany and landed at Philadelphia, Pennsylvania on either the 10th or 11th day of October, 1922. I recall clearly that the day on which I landed at Philadelphia was Columbus Day of 1922.

In July or August, 1923, at the Old Post Office Building in New York City, I applied for and received my first United States citizenship papers. About the same time I was interested in clarifying my status as to an illegal entry into the United States. I went to the Barge Office located at the Battery in New York City and explained that I had jumped ship at Philadelphia in order to enter the country in 1922. I paid my head tax to the United States Immigration authorities and received a seaman's identification card indicating that my head tax had been paid and that I had legally entered the United States. However, it was explained to

me that it would be necessary for me to return to Germany and then reenter the United States so that my status would be entirely clear. Accordingly, in September or October, 1923, I sailed from the Port of New York to Germany as a mess man aboard the S.S. Montclair and reentered the United States at the Port of New York 30 days later on a reentry permit, at which time I was discharged as a member of the crew and made my entry into this country legal.

I might say that subsequent to this legal entry, I remained in the United States continuously until March 27, 1941, with the exception of three trips back to Germany which I will mention below. During this period of time I was employed primarily as a waiter in various restaurants, night clubs and hotels in the vicinity of New York City and other sections of the United States. Also, I was employed for a period of time in selling sanctuary supplies for the Mission of Our Lady of Mercy, 1160 Jackson Boulevard, Chicago, Illinois and on this job I traveled throughout the Dioceses of Belleville, Peoria and Springfield, Illinois.

Sometime in August, 1927, I enlisted as a private at New York City in the United States Army Air Corps. I was first sent to Fort Slocum, New York and later served with the 72nd Bombardment Squadron at Newton Field, Honolulu, T.H. After serving one year, one month and ten days in the United States Army Air Corps, I received an honorable discharge at Fort McDowell, San Francisco, California.

On September 18, 1930, I married ROSE MARIE GUILLI at City Hall in New York City. My wife was born at Walston near Punxsutawney, Pennsylvania. It is my understanding that all my wife's family are dead.

Subsequent to obtaining my first citizenship papers in July or August, 1923, I tried on several occasions, once while I was in the United States Army Air Corps in Honolulu and again while I was living in Sacramento, California, to obtain my final papers but, on each occasion, this was prevented by law because I was unable to establish two years continuous residence in any of these places. However, later I learned while I was living in New York City that it would be unnecessary for me to apply again for first citizenship papers but that I could apply immediately for final citizenship papers because I had married an American citizen. After the necessary preliminaries in the Fall of 1938 or Spring of 1939 I filed a petition for naturalization in New York City. I finally left the United States at the Port of

San Francisco, California on March 27, 1941 without ever having become a citizen of this country.

Aside from the one trip back to Germany to effect a legal entrance into the United States which I have already mentioned, during my stay in the United States I made the following additional trips back to Germany. Traveling on a German passport obtained from the German Consulate in New York City, I returned to Germany with my sister, Clara, to visit our parents there aboard the S.S. Dresden of the North German Lloyd Line, sailing from the Port of New York in March, 1930 and returning to the United States at the Port of New York in May, 1930, also on the S.S. Dresden. On this occasion I entered the United States on a re-entry permit. It was after returning from this trip that I married my wife, ROSE MARIE.

In November, 1930, my wife and I sailed from the Port of New York and returned to Germany on the North German Lloyd Steamer Columbus. On this occasion we re-entered the United States at the Port of New York on the North German Lloyd Steamer General Von Steuben in March or April, 1931. During this trip I was traveling on the same German passport as was used for the previous trip and re-entered the United States on a re-entry permit. On this trip, my wife traveled on an American passport. The German passport which I used on these two trips expired in 1935.

During my stay in the United States some of my brothers and sisters also came to this country but there are only two residing in the United States at the present time. My sister, MRS. JOHANNA MUHN lives at College Point, New York and my brother, ERNEST DASCH, lives at 2127 - 53rd Street, Astoria, Long Island, New York. My mother visited us at New York City in the Summer of 1939 but when Germany and Russia signed the Non-Aggression Pact, she felt that such action meant war and, accordingly, returned to Germany, leaving at the Port of New York in August, 1939.

When war broke out between Germany and Poland on September 1, 1939, I realized I was still a German citizen and probably would be unable to obtain United States citizenship and that my duty lay in Germany since my native land was at war. I also felt that if I did not return to Germany and assist my native land, I would probably be considered unpatriotic and a slacker.

Sometime after I reached this conclusion, I went to the German Consulate in New York City and stated that it was my desire to return to Germany. I had to make a number of calls at the German Consulate to impress them with the fact that I really wanted to return to Germany. Eventually, I executed a form regarding my financial responsibility and it was evidently to prove to the German Government whether or not they would be safe in advancing me money for the return trip. My wife originally intended to

accompany me to Germany but when I finally received notice from the German Consulate in New York City that arrangements had been made for my return to Germany, my wife was seriously ill in the hospital and I had to leave her behind in New York City. The German Consulate at New York City supplied me with a bus ticket from New York City to San Francisco, California and also with a steamship ticket to Japan. I was not advanced any funds but paid my own traveling expenses aside from transportation. With other German nationals who were being repatriated, I left New York City by bus on March 22, 1941, and proceeded to San Francisco, California. The party, including myself, sailed from San Francisco on March 27, 1941 aboard the Japanese N.Y.K. Line Steamship Tatuta Maru. The boat docked at Yokohama, Japan on April 11, 1941 and I proceeded with the party of German nationals to Tokio where we remained until April 22, 1941 under the sponsorship of the German Embassy in Tokio.

I might mention that on this trip from the United States to Germany, one of my fellow passengers was WERNER THIEL who was also returning to Germany from the United States. The name of WERNER THIEL will be mentioned later in my statement.

While I was in Tokio, Japan, the German Embassy required me to sign a document indicating that I owed the German Government either \$451.00 or \$641.00 or \$621.00, I cannot recall which. After arrival in Germany, I received several notices regarding this indebtedness and was required to fill out several additional forms by the German Government, but the indebtedness is still outstanding against me in Germany. Also while in Tokio, the German Embassy advanced me some money, possibly 350 yen, and also paid my hotel bill while in Tokio.

We left Tokio, as stated before, on April 22, 1941 and proceeded by train through Manchuria and Russia to Germany. We actually arrived in German territory, which was actually an occupied portion of Poland, at Malkinia, Poland on May 13, 1941.

I should mention the fact that prior to departing from New York City, the German Embassy there issued me a new German passport and it was on this passport that I made the return trip to Germany. This passport is still among my papers at my home in Speyer-on-the-Rhine, Germany and it served as my police pass while I was in Germany.

Through an organization in Germany set up by the Government to take care of German nationals returning home from abroad, I was received when I entered Germany. Eventually, I obtained employment in the German Foreign Office. My position with the German Foreign Office was in Berlin and I received a monthly salary of 450 marks. My employment with the German Foreign Office

started officially on June 6, 1941. My job was to monitor broadcasts from various American radio stations, some of which broadcasts were propagandist in nature and others were merely programs put on by various news commentators. Specifically, my job was to receive radio transmissions from abroad, word for word, and then to translate them into the German language. It was also my duty to assist in German propaganda and, along these lines, I submitted articles from time to time.

On June 3, 1941, for the first time I met Lieutenant WALTER KAPPE, who is employed by the German High Command in Intelligence 2, which branch of Intelligence is engaged exclusively in conducting and directing German sabotage efforts abroad.

Subsequently, during the latter part of November or early December, 1941, this same Lieutenant KAPPE approached me and said, "George, how would you like to go back to America?" To this I replied, "What do you mean America, that is a peaceful country, isn't it?" Lieutenant KAPPE then said, "Yes, it is a neutral country but they are indirect enemies today because they are helping our enemies with their supplies. Therefore, it is time for us to attack them. We wish to attack the American industries by industrial sabotage. How much do you know about that? Would you mind trying to put together your ideas and write them in English and bring them to me and make three copies, keeping one for yourself and bringing two to me?" I agreed to follow Lieutenant KAPPE'S suggestion and subsequently I submitted to him a five page memorandum containing my suggestions on doing sabotage work in the United States and setting out some details as to how the venture might be conducted. The German High Command must have liked my memorandum because, subsequently, some of my suggestions contained in that memorandum were adopted in the plans set up for our later trip to the United States for the purpose of committing sabotage.

On January 3, 1942, I was called to the office of the German High Command in Berlin where I was interviewed and cross-examined by Lieutenant KAPPE and Captain ASTOR with reference to the proposed sabotage trip to the United States as well as regarding my qualifications.

On the 9th or 10th of January, 1942, I had a conference at the Headquarters of Intelligence 2 of the German High Command with Captain ASTOR and Lieutenant KAPPE, where further discussion was had regarding this project. At that time, I was advised that two groups of men would go to the United States for the purpose of committing sabotage; that I would be the leader of group number one and that a fellow by the name of EDDIE KERLING would be the leader of group number two. Also at that time I was informed that in the course of my work with Intelligence 2 I would be known in the German High Command under the name of STRICH, meaning short dash.

I forgot to mention that shortly after my arrival in Germany on May 13, 1941, actually about two weeks after my arrival in Berlin, I received a summons from the local police station to report there, and I was required to fill out various forms regarding my age, profession, ability, etc., these forms being executed in connection with possible military service in the German Army. Two weeks after this, I received a summons from the German Army to appear, and was given a thorough physical examination in Berlin. I passed the physical examination satisfactorily, and at that time I was issued a military pass bearing my photograph, and other descriptive material. About seven days later, I received an order to report for induction into the German Army. This, I believe, was sometime in August 1941. I was supposed to report for induction to Infantry Battalion No. 8 in Berlin. I took this summons to my place of employment in the German Foreign Office, and through their intercession was deferred from service in the German Army. However, about every two or three months I was again called up for military duty, but on each occasion the German Foreign Office was successful in having my case deferred. Up to the time I left my employment with the German Foreign Office on February 27, 1942, I was never inducted, nor did I serve in the German Army.

My employment at the German Foreign Office was terminated at the request of the German High Command on February 27, 1942, but it is my understanding that to this date I am carried on the records of the German government as a civil employee of the German Foreign Office. This step was evidently taken, because my mission was supposed to be extremely confidential and secret.

From the time of my release from the German Foreign Office up until the time when our training was begun in a sabotage school operated by the German High Command, which started about April 10, 1942, I went daily either to a room in the German High Command, or to the undercover headquarters of Intelligence 2 in the Derkankasus where I studied the personal history of all the other agents who were supposed to partake in this sabotage mission to the United States with me. I was evidently one of the first ones enlisted in this mission, and, therefore, had a great deal to do in setting up the plans for our trip to the United States, and in outlining what we were to do after our arrival here.

I was given the privilege of offering my opinion upon the ability of each man who was to accompany us on the mission. The majority of the men had lived for a period from ten to fourteen years in the United States, working in different occupations, but the majority had been members of the German American Bund or were members of the N.S.D.A.P. Furthermore, I was given an opportunity to read files and other material containing the records of sabotage acts which had already been committed by agents of foreign governments against German territory. I asked

Lieutenant KAPPE to let me have the benefit of all their experience in the past, either successful or unsuccessful, in sabotage attempts abroad. During this period, Lieutenant KAPPE had me sign a document in which I pledged myself to the strictest confidence and secrecy regarding the sabotage school of the German High Command which we were scheduled to attend. I guess you would have called this act of signing this for him, signing up or registering for the school. Also during this period I learned that the following men would attend the sabotage school, and would also engage in the sabotage mission against the United States.

Group No. 1

TRUE NAME

Alias to Be Used in the United States

RICHARD QUIRIN
HEINRICH HARM HEINCK
ERNEST PETER BURGER

RICHARD QUINTAS
HENRY KAYMER
ERNEST PETER BURGER

Group No. 2

EDWARD KERLING (Leader)
HERMANN NEUBAUER
HERBERT HAUPT
WERNER THIEL

EDWARD KELLY
HERMAN NICHOLAS
HERBERT HAUPT
JOHN THOMAS

I want to explain that prior to entering the sabotage school, I did not actually know that the final groups would be as they are set out above, but we learned while in the school which men were to be attached to myself, as the leader of Group No. 1, and to KERLING as the leader of Group No. 2.

All of the above mentioned persons, including JOSEPH SCHMIDT, alias JOSEPH SWENSON, who was attached to my group originally, ERNEST ZUBER and "SCOTTY" (last name unknown) began attendance on or about April 10, 1942 at a sabotage school conducted by the German High Command at Quents Lake, which is located near Brandenburg, Germany, about sixty miles from Berlin. The quarters which we occupied at Quents Lake were on an estate formerly owned by a wealthy Jew, which estate was on the edge of Quents Lake. The buildings at the school were equipped with an up-to-date laboratory, class rooms, sleeping quarters, gymnasium, proving grounds, and other facilities for giving the students proper and expert instructions and thorough training for sabotage work. Lieutenant KAPPE was in charge of the entire class at the sabotage school, and he was assisted in this job by REINHOLD BART, a young man who formerly lived somewhere in New Jersey.

There were two instructors in the school, namely Dr. KOENIG and Dr. SCHULTZ. During the course of the sabotage school, all of us received instructions in the manufacture and use of high explosives, in the

making of incendiary devices with ordinary chemicals and apparatus which could be bought readily in the United States, formulas for the making of the various explosives and incendiaries, how to manufacture bombs, and were also given complete instructions in the procedure for using high explosives and incendiaries in sabotage work. Many of the devices and explosives were tried out by us, and we were also given a brief training in the use of firearms. The actual instruction at Quentz Lake took approximately three weeks. The general routine was to attend classes and have study periods Monday through Thursday of each week. On Friday and Saturday, Lieutenant KAPPE and REINHOLD BART would more or less direct our activities, and we would go over our plans for the trip to the United States, make up cover stories for use in the United States, rehearse these cover stories, and such like. Also, while at the school, we had several hours of instruction in secret ink writing to be used in corresponding with the men after we reached the United States. We were taught three different formulas for making secret ink, but I do not recall these formulas in detail, but believe some of the other men may recall these formulas more clearly.

The sabotage school was terminated on or about April 30, 1942, and the entire group then proceeded back to Berlin, with the exception of ZUBER and SCOTTY, who had dropped out of the group during the course of the training. Upon our arrival in Berlin the entire group of nine men was given a twelve day vacation, with the exception of myself and KERLING.

We were instructed to report back to Berlin on May 11th for the purpose of receiving additional instructions in secret ink writing. We both arrived back at the German High Command in Berlin on that date, and were each provided with secret ink and wrote, each on a separate handkerchief, the names and addresses of contacts to be used by the group leaders in the United States. There also appeared on each handkerchief the pass word to be used by the group, and also the name by which this mission to the United States for sabotage purposes, which was to be known by the German High Command as "Franz Daniel Pastorius".

It should be noted that this name was chosen because it was the name of one of the first Germans to take a group of emigrants to the United States many years ago. I have given the handkerchief containing this information to the Federal Bureau of Investigation.

Also, on this occasion, EDDIE KERLING and myself were each given three matches, the tips of which were treated with a chemical to be used for writing secret messages to an address in Lisbon, Portugal, which name and address in Portugal appears on the handkerchief mentioned above. Only the group leaders were supplied with these matches, and they were only to be used for sending messages through the Lisbon mail address back to the German High Command.

On May 12, 1942, the remaining men in both groups returned to Berlin, and we were all given some additional training with specific emphasis on completing all arrangements for our departure for the United States. From May 12 through May 15, both groups were taken on inspection tours and were shown in detail factories and other installations similar to those which we would be required to sabotage in the United States, so that we would be entirely familiar with such matters, and would know the most vulnerable point in the various types of factories, and other points which were to be attacked in this country.

We were taken to the railroad shops in Berlin and were shown the vulnerable points on locomotives, freight cars, and other railroad equipment. We were taken on a trip up the river from Berlin where we were shown the various types of locks at the river dams, and it was pointed out to us how each type of lock could be most readily and effectively sabotaged. We were also taken to several light metal plants of I.G. Farbenindustries at Bitterfeld and Aachen, where light metal, such as aluminum and magnesium were being manufactured.

At these plants we were also shown the points most vulnerable for sabotage attacks, and special emphasis was placed on attacking the power house and electrical facilities for these plants to cripple the electrolysis processes used in the manufacture of these light metals. We were accompanied throughout these tours by Lieutenant KAPPE, and on some of the trips we were also accompanied by Dr. SCHULTZ and Dr. KOENIG who had been our instructors at Quentz Lake.

At all of these points on our tours we were received very well, but the purpose of our tour was concealed, and it was made to appear that we were receiving this training to perform counter sabotage work against the Russians.

According to instructions received through Lieutenant KAPPE from the German High Command, the following were the assignments of the two groups as to sabotage objectives in the United States:

Group Number 1, of which I was the leader, was instructed to attack particularly the light metal industry in the United States. Our first objective was the Aluminum Company of America plant at Alcoa, Tennessee. Our second objective was the Aluminum Company of America's plant at E. St. Louis, Illinois. Our third objective was to attack the Creolite plant at Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, and our fourth objective was to attack the locks at the river dams located along the Ohio river from Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania to Louisville, Kentucky. Having successfully accomplished our attacks on these four objectives, we were then instructed to

conduct a general nuisance type of sabotage wherever the judgment of the leader indicated the most damage and confusion would result, such as throwing bombs in department stores operated by Jews, in railroad stations, and other like places.

Group Number 2, headed by KERLING, was instructed by the German High Command to attack, as I recall, first a large light metal plant near Niagara Falls, New York; second, the Pennsylvania Railroad Station at Newark, New Jersey; third, the railroad bridge over Hell's Gate, East River, New York City; and fourth, various points along the Chesapeake and Ohio Railroad, which was considered a very strategic railroad in the United States.

After completing the above assignments, Group number 2 was also instructed to conduct a general nuisance type of sabotage similar to the instructions of Group number 1.

After the tour of inspection, which I have mentioned above, all the men in both groups returned to Berlin, and we were all given two days' vacation to return home for the last time, and to close up our private affairs. We all reassembled in Berlin on May 20, 1942 for final instructions, and were given a farewell party by officials of the German High Command. I should mention that throughout our training in Germany for our mission to the United States, it was constantly impressed upon us that we were soldiers.

Prior to leaving Berlin, I and each of the other men were required to sign a contract with the German High Command. I presume that the contracts signed by the other men were similar to my own. In my contract it was agreed that I would be paid the monthly amount of 600 marks, and that 200 marks of this money would be paid to my parents in Speyer-on-the-Rhine, Germany, and the remaining 400 marks would be deposited in the Deutscher Bank in Berlin to my account.

In my contract, I also pledged myself to secrecy regarding my mission until my death, and we were given to understand that in all our activities we were subject to military discipline for a breach of confidence or turning traitor to our country, even to the extent of the death penalty. I clearly understood from that contract, that as a soldier of the German Army under the German High Command, I was to undertake a secret mission to the United States. My contract also indicated that if my wife returned to Germany, she would be taken care of by the government, and that if I succeeded in returning to Germany, I would be given employment by the German Government.

In conversation with Lieutenant KAPPE during my training in Germany for the mission to the United States, there was a discussion which indicated that I might be made a Commercial Attache of some German Consulate abroad, if I was successful in returning to Germany after the war.

On May 22, 1942, both groups accompanied by Lieutenant KAPPE, departed from Berlin by train, and proceeded to Paris, France, both groups remaining there until Monday morning, May 25, 1942, when we all proceeded by train to Lorient, France, which is a German submarine base on the French coast.

Prior to the departure of either group from Lorient, France, Lieutenant KAPPE gave to each, myself and KERLING, \$50,000 to be used to cover unusual expenses of each group in connection with their mission in the United States. We had previously turned over four bags, to the German High Command. Three of these bags were for KERLING'S group, and a gladstone bag for myself. The German High Command had constructed a secret compartment in each bag, and it was in these secret compartments that the \$50,000 for each group was hidden at the time the money was turned over to KERLING and myself by Lieutenant KAPPE.

Lieutenant KAPPE also gave to each KERLING and myself four water tight canvas money belts, each containing \$4,000, one to be given to each man, including the leaders at the first installment of their pay of \$9,000 for two years' sabotage work in the United States. Lieutenant KAPPE also gave to each KERLING and myself, \$5,000 for each man under the group leader, and including the group leader, to be given to each man at a time to be decided upon in the discretion of the leader, as the second installment on their \$9,000 pay for two years.

Lieutenant KAPPE also gave to each KERLING and myself \$445 for each of the four men in both groups, to be given to each man prior to landing in the United States for ready spending money.

All the money given by Lieutenant KAPPE, as outlined above, to both KERLING and me was contained in the secret compartments of our bags, with the exception of the money belts containing \$4,000 each, and the \$445 for each man as ready cash. All of the money given to KERLING and me by Lieutenant KAPPE was in United States currency, most of which was in bills of \$50 denominations.

I permitted each man in my group to fit his money belt to his person, and then to place his initial on the belt. Then I held the money belts of all the men in my group, together with their ready cash of \$445 each, until just prior to the time when we effected our landing in the United States.

I forgot to mention that JOSEPH SCHMIDT, alias Joseph Swenson, who was originally designated as one of the members of my group, was found to be suffering from a venereal disease while we were in Paris, and he was sent back.

It is my belief that SCHMIDT will be one of the members of a third sabotage group to be sent to the United States, the leader of which group I understand will be WILLIAM BRAUBENDER, alias Billy Smith, whose name to the German High Command will be known only as DEMPSEY.

I became acquainted with both SCHMIDT and BRAUBENDER, but do not know who will comprise the other members of this third group. From what I heard, I understand that they will bring with them radio equipment, which will be installed in an automobile, so that transmission can be made in various locations considerable distances apart, so that this group can communicate with Germany direct.

The third group was scheduled to come to the United States, possibly sometime in July or August, and we made arrangements to make a contact with this group at the Jefferson Hotel in St. Louis, Missouri.

I should also mention that after effecting our landing in the United States, KERLING and I as leaders of the two groups, had arranged to meet on July 4th in the Hotel Gibson in Cincinnati, Ohio. In case the meeting on July 4th was unsuccessful, we agreed to meet on subsequent dates, which were specified, at the same meeting place.

Further, it was agreed, while we were still in Berlin, that neither group would make any contacts prior to the meeting in Cincinnati, Ohio, on July 4, 1942, and our instructions were that no acts of sabotage were to be committed for two months after our arrival in this country.

Group #2, headed by KERLING, and including also HERMANN NEUBAUER, HERBERT HAUPT, and WERNER THIEL, departed from Lorient, France on a German submarine at about 8:00 P.M. on May 26, 1942. This group was scheduled to sail in German Submarine #203, but there is some doubt in my mind as to whether that submarine was actually used. However, Group #2 was scheduled to land on the beach at a point near Jacksonville, Florida. Since Group #2 left Lorient, France, on May 26, 1942, I have not had contact personally with KERLING, NEUBAUER, HAUPT, or THIEL.

On the evening of May 28, 1942, I, accompanied by RICHARD QUIRIN, alias Richard Quintas, HEINRICH HARM HEINCK, alias Henry Kayner, and ERNEST PETER BURGER, were rushed to the pier at Lorient about 7:30 P.M. We took with us to the pier four boxes which had been loaded for us by officials of the German High Command with high explosives and incendiary material, fuses, ignition devices and so forth, which were to be used by my group in carrying out sabotage in the United States.

We boarded German Submarine #202, official name, the "Innsbruck", with the four boxes mentioned above and the money which Lieutenant KAPPE had previously given to me. We proceeded to the open sea escorted by several German warships.

I am not clear in my mind as to the exact course followed by the German submarine in proceeding to the United States, but we proceeded under the surface and on the surface until we were nearing the United States coast.

Shortly after midnight and during the early morning hours of June 13, 1942, we arrived in the German submarine about four hundred meters off the coast of Long Island. It was extremely foggy, making visibility difficult, and we did not know our exact location but after taking their bearings, the crew of the submarine was of the opinion that we were in the vicinity of East Hampton, Long Island, New York, which was the point where it had been planned originally that my group would land in this country.

I, RICHARD QUIRIN, HEINRICH HARM HEINCK, ERNEST PETER BURGER, and two German sailors from the submarine were loaded in a rubber boat alongside the submarine, together with our four boxes of explosives and sabotage equipment, and our civilian clothing. We paddled ashore and finally effected a landing and immediately unloaded the boat on the beach. According to instructions given before, each man took one of the boxes and carried it up on the high level of the beach.

I went immediately to the top of the beach and took a look at the surroundings. I noticed to my horror that there were beacons to the left of us and beacons to the right of us, so I thought we should act

quickly. I ran back to the boat, gave the boys instructions to take off their dungarees, which they had been wearing during their trip over in the German submarine, and to put on their civilian clothes. I was still dressed in my dungarees. I left the boys to go back and see how the two sailors were making out. They were struggling with the boat and looking for their lost oars. I helped them to pull the boat further on the land and to turn the boat over to get rid of the water, which had come over the sides during our landing. I was thinking that the landing was perfect and that the two German sailors should return to the submarine as soon as possible and that they should only wait until I could bring them the duffle bag containing the dungarees which they were supposed to take back to the submarine in accordance with the instructions of the Captain of the German submarine.

As I was talking to the fellows and giving them last instructions, and had started back on the shore, I saw to my horror a tall person walking along the shore towards us with a flash-light in his hand. I realized immediately that this could not be one of our men and in order to prevent this person from recognizing the two men with me as sailors of the German Navy, I approached the stranger on the beach in rapid steps. I recognized him as an American sailor of the Coast Guard. He asked me, "what are you doing down here? What's up here?" I explained to him that we were lost; that we had left East Hampton to go down to Montauk Point and had become lost en route. The man said to me, "What do you mean East Hampton and Montauk Point? Do you know where you are?" I told him I thought he should know and asked him where his station was located. He said "It is right up there. My station is Amagansett." I knew immediately that we were off our original landing as we had planned to land on the beach at East Hampton, Long Island, New York.

The sailor boy asked me to come along to his station, and I was confronted with a very ticklish problem. In order to carry out instructions of the Captain of the submarine, I had to lure the man back to the row boat, so that he could be overpowered by the two sailors and taken out to the submarine. On the other hand, I didn't want to do this, nor did I want to go to the station with him, as it would be hard to explain what we were doing at the time, because the bags and the boxes of explosives were laying on the beach.

I realized that the other fellows were losing their heads completely, so I decided to use a little psychology and see if I could bribe the sailor. I then approached the sailor directly and told him that I knew we had disobeyed and that we had done the wrong thing, and that I thought it best to forget it if I would offer him something. As I stood there talking to him and he refused to be bribed, ERNEST PETER BURGER came towards me and addressed me in German. I interrupted him immediately and told him to get back with the other guys. I noticed that the sailor boy was scared so I spoke to him in the following words: "You have got a father and mother at home boy. You would like to see them wouldn't you? You have undoubtedly given your oath to do your duty and I am telling you that by taking this money

which I am offering you, you are doing nothing else but your duty. So please take it. My name is GEORGE JOHN DAVIS. (The name which I had agreed to use as an alias while in the United States.) What is your name?" He said "Frank Collins, sir."

I eventually gave this FRANK COLLINS what I thought was \$300 which I counted out to him in the dark and dense fog, with the aid of his flash-light. COLLINS then seemed to be willing to let us go, and he said "All right sir, but now scram out of here will you please."

After COLLINS had left me, we quickly took all the boxes containing explosives and other sabotage material back from the beach aways and buried them in the sand with several short German shovels we had brought from the submarine. We then changed to our civilian clothes and placed all our dungarees in a bag and also buried the bag. The excitement was such that we probably dropped a number of articles on the beach in the vicinity, but we wanted to get going away from that place. In the excitement, the two German sailors returned to the submarine in the rubber boat without taking the bag containing the dungarees back to the submarine with them in accordance with instructions.

After we had buried everything on the beach at a point which we thought we could locate later when we returned to recover this material, we proceeded on foot further inland. We moved around some in a group but decided to lay low until daybreak in the belief that we were probably surrounded.

At daybreak, I led QUIRIN, HEINCK, and BURGER by a rather indirect route to the Amagansett, Long Island Station of the Long Island Railroad, where we arrived about 5:30 A.M. on June 13, 1942. From the distance we had walked, I would judge that the four of us landed from the German submarine on the beach a few miles east of Amagansett, Long Island.

We waited at the station in Amagansett until the station opened, and then I purchased four tickets for Jamaica, Long Island, telling the ticket agent that we had been out fishing in explanation of our rather untidy appearance. The four of us caught the 6:57 A.M. train out of Amagansett, Long Island and arrived at Jamaica, Long Island about 9:00 A.M. By pre-arrangement, BURGER and I stayed together and QUIRIN and HEINCK went off together as we had agreed to purchase clothing in Jamaica, so that we would not be so conspicuous when we arrived in New York City. BURGER and I purchased sufficient clothing in Jamaica to improve our appearance, then returned to the Jamaica station and caught a Long Island train into Pennsylvania Station, New York City.

We checked into the Gover or Clinton Hotel. BURGER was assigned to Room #1421 and I was assigned to Room #1414. Subsequently, on Saturday, June 13, 1942, we purchased some additional clothing at R. H. Macy and Company's Department Store to make ourselves appear less suspicious

because BURGER did not even have any luggage when he checked into the Governor Clinton Hotel. At the time we checked into the Governor Clinton Hotel, I had in my possession the gladstone bag which the German High Command had fitted up with the secret compartment for transporting the money which had been given to me by Lieutenant KAPPE. I should mention that just prior to landing from the submarine, I had given QUIRIN, HEINCK, and BURGER their money belts, each supposed to contain \$4,000.00, and also \$419.00 in cash. It was originally supposed to be \$445.00 in cash to each man, but I found some bills with Japanese writing on them and I decided to leave them on the submarine, so the ready cash given out came to \$419.00 apiece.

Later in the day on Saturday, June 13, 1942, by pre-arrangement, BURGER and I met QUIRIN and HEINCK in the balcony of the Horn and Hardart Cafeteria located on Seventh Avenue in the vicinity of Thirty-fourth Street. We conferred at the time, and I gave QUIRIN and HEINCK instructions as to how they should proceed and conduct themselves as to locating a place to live. Again by pre-arrangement, BURGER and I met QUIRIN and HEINCK about 6:00 P.M. on Sunday, June 14, 1942, in the vicinity of Grant's Tomb, located near East 116th Street and Riverside Drive in New York City.

BURGER and I returned later in the evening to our rooms at the Governor Clinton Hotel and I wish to state that since that time, I have not seen QUIRIN or HEINCK.

While travelling to the United States on the German submarine, I had plenty of time to think and conceived the idea that we should have some means of identifying to each other a messenger or stranger whom we might send between us after we arrived in the United States. I noticed that part of the insignia of the sailors on the submarine was a small silver colored light metal porcupine pig. These were shaped approximately like a porcupine, were made of some light metal like aluminum, and were only about one-eighth or one-sixteenth inch thick. Accordingly, I had one of the sailors on the submarine make us eight of these little metal porcupine pigs. I kept two of them myself and gave two each to QUIRIN, HEINCK, and BURGER, with the instructions that when they sent anyone to me or between themselves, who could be received safely, that this individual was to be given one of these porcupine pigs, and that when the stranger or messenger contacted another member of the group, he would present the porcupine pig for safe identification. All of us, to the best of my knowledge, brought these porcupine pigs ashore but I do not believe that they were ever used in the manner intended.

I might also mention that it was our instructions from the German High Command to survey the situation after we reached the United States and to enlist in our cause any persons who appeared to be entirely loyal to the Nazi cause, and could be trusted to assist and have knowledge of our mission in this country. By this method, KERLING'S and my group, which were, to the best of my knowledge, the first such groups sent to America by the German High Command to commit sabotage, were to build up a German sabotage organization

in the United States with headquarters, means of communication, and exchanging ideas, so that when other groups would be sent over from time to time in the future, there would be already a German sabotage organization active in this country, into which they could fit. It was believed that this procedure would develop the most efficient system in the United States and would also accomplish the greatest amount of good for the Nazi cause in this country.

I have carefully read the above statement which is all true and correct to the best of my knowledge. Accordingly, I am voluntarily signing below, and I am also signing each of the other sixteen pages, which are all a part of this statement.

(Signed) _____

Witnesses:

N.D. WILLS

F.G. JOHNSTONE

Special Agents
Federal Bureau of Investigation
United States Department of Justice
607 Foley Square, U.S. Court House
New York, New York

July 2, 1942
The above statement contains the substance of admissions made to us by George John Dasch. We read the statement on July 2, 1942 in our presence and objected to signing it and refused to state that the facts as related reflected his statements or admissions to us. We are attaching a list of the specific objections made by Dasch to this statement. ^{Objected to signing even if specific admissions reflected here.}
Frank J. Johnstone.

WAR DEPARTMENT
SERVICES OF SUPPLY
OFFICE OF THE JUDGE ADVOCATE GENERAL

Memorandum:

8.5,

Col Greenbaum
to Col Harrison Reynolds

3967

Under. See

May Thurman in
Maj Trusch
office in Balcany
when General comes in

2667

DESIGNATION OF ASSISTANT TRIAL JUDGE ADVOCATES AND ASSISTANT
DEFENSE COUNSEL.

May it Please the Commission:

The trial judge advocates nominate
and request your honorable body to accept as assistant trial
judge advocates the following named officers of the United
States Army:

Colonel F. Granville Munson;

Colonel John M. Weir; and

Colonel ^{Erwin} Ernest M. Treusch; all being officers of the

Judge Advocate General's Department.

Also the following named officers of
the Department of Justice:

Oscar Cox, Assistant Solicitor General of the United States,
and

James H. Rowe, Jr., Assistant to the Attorney General.

PROCEDURAL FORMS FOR TRIAL JUDGE ADVOCATES.

INDEX.

Arraignment, 7
Assistant defense counsel, designation of, 2
Assistant trial judge advocates, designation of, 1
Challenges, 4, 5
Closing Arguments, 9
Cutler, Lloyd H., presence of, 3
Oaths:
 Member of court, 5
 Reporter, 4
 Witnesses, 12
Opening (Technical) Statements, 4-6
Opening Statement on Prosecution's case, 8
Presence of personnel after recess, 11
Washington, George T., presence of, 3
Woodson, Rear Admiral W. B., presence of, 3
Witnesses: Oath, Initial question of; recall, 12

DESIGNATION OF ASSISTANT DEFENSE COUNSEL.
(To be made by one of Defense Counsel).

May it Please the Commission:

The defense counsel request your honorable body
to accept as Assistant Defense Counsel the following named officers
of the United States Army:

Major Lawson H. Stone, Specialist Corps;

Captain William G. Russell, Infantry; (and, in the
case of George John Basch only, Colonel Carl L. Ristine,
Inspector General's Department).

REQUEST THAT CERTAIN PERSONS NOT CONNECTED WITH THE
CASE OR ON STAFF OF THE ATTORNEY GENERAL MAY BE PRESENT.

May it Please the Commission: "Because of the interest of the Navy Department and of G-2, General Staff Corps, U. S. Army, in this case, it is respectfully requested that Rear Admiral W. B. Woodson, Judge Advocate General of the Navy, and Captain John Lansdale, U. S. Army, as representing G-2, be permitted to be present at open sessions of this Commission.

Also, because their services will be needed from time to time during the trial by the Attorney General, that George T. Washington, Esq., and Lloyd H. Cutler, Esq., of the staff of the Attorney General, may be permitted to be present.

OPENING (TECHNICAL) STATEMENTS.

The prosecution is ready to proceed with the trial in the case of the United States v. (naming accused).

The reporter (s) will be sworn--

"You swear that you will faithfully perform the duties of a reporter to this Commission. So help you God".

(To the defense)--"Do you desire a copy of the record? Provision has been made to furnish you with two copies if desired."

"I will now read the order appointing this Military Commission." (Here read the order).

"All the members of the Commission named therein are present, to wit, Major General Frank McCoy, Major General Walter S. Grant, Major General Blanton Winship, Major General Lorenzo D. Gasser, Brigadier General Guy V. Henry, Brigadier General John T. Lewis and Brigadier General John T. Kennedy."

"The accuser in this case is Colonel F. Granville Munson, United States Army. The charges were forwarded to the trial judge advocates of this Commission by letter of The Adjutant General, dated July 6, 1942, pursuant to the order of the Secretary of War.

"No member of this Commission is to be called as a witness for the prosecution and no cause for or ground of challenge of any member of this Commission is known to the prosecution."

(Addressing Commission). "Is any member of this Commission aware of any facts which he believes to be a ground for challenge by either side? If so, please state these facts.

(After a pause). It is assumed from your silence that no member of the Commission is aware of any such facts."

"The prosecution has no challenges."

"Does the accused or his counsel desire to challenge any member of this Commission for cause? If so, please state the name of the member and the grounds of your challenge." (Note: It is assumed no peremptory challenge will be allowed; otherwise that question will have to be asked).

(Assuming no challenges or after action on challenges). All persons in the court room will rise and the Commission will now be sworn.

"You (naming the members of the Commission who are to sit in the order they are shown in the appointing order, successively), Major General McCoy, Major General Grant, Major General Winship, Major General Casser, Brigadier General Henry, Brigadier General Lewis, and Brigadier General Kennedy, do swear that you will well and truly try and determine, according to the evidence, the matter now before you, between the United States of America and the person to be tried, and that you will duly administer justice, without partiality, favor or affection, according to the provisions of the rules and articles for the government of the armies of the United States, so far as the same are applicable to trials before military commissions, and if any doubt should arise not explained by said articles, then according to your conscience, the best of your understanding, and the custom of war in like cases; and you do further swear that you will not divulge the

findings or sentence of the Military Commission until they shall be published by the proper authority or duly announced by the Commission, except to the trial judge advocates and assistant trial judge advocates; neither will you disclose or discover the vote or opinion of any particular member of the Commission upon a challenge or upon the findings or sentence, unless required to give evidence thereof as a witness by a court of justice in due course of law. So help you God."

(Then President will swear trial judge advocates and assistant trial judge advocates).

ARRAIGNMENT.

"I shall now read the charges and specifications, the affidavit thereto and the order of reference to this Commission for trial, during which the accused and the personnel of the prosecution and defense are requested to stand. (Read same).

"Before receiving pleas to the general issue, I advise the accused and his counsel that special pleas or motions, if any, should be made at this time."

(After disposing of special pleas and motions)--

"How does the accused plead to Specification 1 of Charge I?

"To Specification 2 of Charge I?

"To Charge I?

"To the Specification of Charge II?

"To Charge II?

"To the Specification of Charge III?

"To Charge III?

"To the Specification of Charge IV?

"To Charge IV?

OPENING STATEMENT FOR PROSECUTION.

Following arraignment the prosecution may make an opening statement of the same character as in a civil case -- and then calls first witness, swearing him. (See under "Witness" for form of oath).

The prosecution rests, as in a civil case, followed by the defense, with the right of rebuttal in the prosecution.

CLOSING ARGUMENTS.

1. Trial Judge Advocate may open.
2. Defense counsel makes his closing argument.
3. Trial judge advocate may reply, if he so desires.

AT CLOSE OF ARGUMENTS.

Prosecution: "Has the defense anything further to offer?"

(If answered in the negative)--

Prosecution adds: "The prosecution has nothing further
to offer".

(President then closes Court to consider findings. If the
Court should follow the procedure of courts-martial, and
reopen before announcing its findings and ask if the
prosecution has any evidence of previous convictions, the
answer will, of course, be in the negative (assuming there
is no such evidence)).

ON THE COURT RECONVENING IN THE SAME CASE.

Prosecution: "All the personnel of the Commission, prosecution and defense, who were present at the close of the previous session in this case are again present".

(Note any exceptions). The accused and the reporter are also present".

WITNESS.

(a) Form of Oath.

"You swear that the evidence you shall give in the case now in hearing shall be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth. So help you God".

(b) Ask each witness (on both sides) these initial questions:

(If a civilian) "State your name, residence or office address and occupation.

(If a military witness) "State your name, rank, organization and station".

"Do you know the accused? If so, state his name".

(c) If a witness is recalled: "I remind you that you are still under oath as a witness in this case".

With the permission of Maj. Gen. Frank R. McCoy, President of the Military Commission, Attorney General Francis Biddle and Maj. Gen. Myron C. Cramer, the Judge Advocate General, issued a statement today on the reasons for employing a military commission and the reasons for secrecy in the trial of the eight alleged saboteurs.

Gen. McCoy cautioned that he was expressing no comment on those portions of the statement which referred to controversial matters now at issue before the Commission. Gen. McCoy stated that these controversial remarks would not be considered by the Commission in reaching its decision.

The statement follows:

After the eight prisoners were apprehended by the F.B.I., the Department of Justice recommended to the Secretary of War that they be placed on trial before a military tribunal. Upon further consultation with the Judge Advocate General, it was decided that the most appropriate form would be a military commission.

Military commissions have been called by that name in the United States since the War with Mexico, but they have existed under other names for centuries before that throughout the Western World. They exercise the executive authority of a military commander in time of war over persons who are not members of the commander's own army, and who commit hostile acts without wearing the uniform of the enemy.

Commission of hostile acts without being in uniform has been punishable in this way for at least eight hundred years, under the (so-called) laws of war. These rules governing the conduct of belligerents survived the advent of democratic government in this country and abroad, and in 18 this nation became the first to codify them in part into Congressional statutes, now known as the Articles of War.

These Articles define certain acts punishable under the laws of war in precise terms and, in more general fashion, recognize the jurisdiction of military tribunals over others. Thus, Articles 81 and 82 empower military commissions to try any persons accused of relieving, harboring or communicating with the enemy, or of spying, and to impose any sentence including death. And in general terms, other punishable acts are recognized by Article 15, which authorizes military commissions to try any "offenders or offenses" which by "the law of war" are within their jurisdiction.

The eight prisoners are charged with offenses under all three of these Articles. The specific charge under "the law of war" referred to in Article 15 is the commission of hostile acts behind the lines without wearing the uniform of the enemy.

Military commissions differ from courts-martial in many respects. Generally speaking, courts-martial, in the present-day sense of the term, have power over offenses committed by members of our own armed forces, while

military commissions have power over other persons. Courts-martial are bound by fairly rigid rules of evidence and procedure, and have limited powers of punishment. Military commissions have full discretion in all of these respects.

The decisions of military commissions can be reviewed only by superior military authority, and the President has provided that the findings of this commission be transmitted directly to him for action. All Revolutionary War historians remember Major Andre's famous plea to General Washington that he be shot, rather than hung, for being caught behind our lines as a spy. His request was denied, because hanging is considered more ignominious than shooting, and more fitting for a spy. And during the Creek Indian Wars, Andrew Jackson reinstated the death sentence imposed by a military tribunal on one Robert Ambrister, even though the military tribunal had reconsidered and sentenced him "to receive fifty stripes on the bare back and be confined with a ball and chain to hard labor for twelve calendar months." Jackson ordered that Ambrister "be shot to death agreeably to the sentence of the court."

hanged

The President has ordered in the present trial that "such evidence shall be admitted as would . . . have probative value to a reasonable man." This standard is far more flexible than that applied in ordinary criminal trials. However, the present trial has been conducted with particular deference to the objections raised by counsel for the accused, and many of their objections to the admissibility of evidence have been sustained. The Commission has also permitted defense counsel to cross-examine all prosecution witnesses at length, and some of them have been on the stand longer on cross than on direct.

Considerations of national security prevent any disclosure to the public of the evidence introduced at the trial. All persons present in the courtroom, except the prisoners, have been sworn not to reveal any of the proceedings until authorized by competent authority. While it has been traditional in this country to avoid so-called star chamber proceedings, other considerations must necessarily prevail at this time.

In the first place, the proceedings before the commission are really not a trial at all, in the accepted sense of the term. According to authoritative military historians, enemies caught behind the lines without uniform need not be tried at all under international law. They may be executed summarily. The present proceedings are merely a matter of grace to the prisoners, in recognition of our own respect for democratic procedures.

Secondly, it is of the utmost importance that no information be permitted to reach the enemy on any of these matters:

How the saboteurs were so swiftly apprehended;

How our intelligence services are equipped to work against them;

What sources of information we have inside Germany;

Who are the witnesses against the saboteurs;

How our coastal defenses are manned;

How much we have learned about German sabotage methods, plans, programs and the identity of other saboteurs who might be or have been sent to this country;

How much we have learned about German submarine methods, intelligence methods, munitions plants and morale.

All of the testimony given at the trial bears to some degree upon these matters. There is no satisfactory way of censoring and editing this testimony for the press without revealing, by statement or significant omission, the answers to many of the questions which may now be puzzling our enemies.

We do not propose to tell our enemies the answers to the questions which are puzzling them. The only way not to tell them, is not to tell them.

This is not a case of concealing bad news from the public. The evidence at this trial is exceedingly good news, in all respects. Nor is the issue one of star chamber proceedings. Under international law, the prisoners are entitled to no trial at all.

It is purely a question of whether we are going to hand valuable information to the enemy in order to satisfy a perfectly understandable and justifiable curiosity on the part of the American people.

The American people will not insist on acquiring information which, by the mere telling, would confer an untold advantage upon the enemy.